DRAFT NATIONAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK

APRIL 2019
# Table of Contents

**LIST OF FIGURES** ........................................................................................................................................... 6

**LIST OF TABLES** ........................................................................................................................................ 9

**ACKNOWLEDGEMENT** ................................................................................................................................. 11

**ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS** ........................................................................................................... 12

**GLOSSARY OF TERMS** ............................................................................................................................... 15

**EXECUTIVE SUMMARY** ............................................................................................................................. 22

**PART ONE: Introduction** ............................................................................................................................... 23

1.1 Setting the Scene ...................................................................................................................................... 24

1.2 The National Transformation Logic & Space ............................................................................................ 24

1.3 Taking Stock: National Spatial Development and the need for a NSDF ..................................................... 26

1.3.1 Where do we come from and what needs to be done and undone? ....................................................... 26

1.3.2 What have we accomplished and what more needs to be done? ........................................................... 28

1.3.3 International Precedent and Experience .................................................................................................. 33

1.4 The NSDF as Tool for National Spatial Development and Transformation .................................................. 34

1.4.1 The NSDF’s Mandate .......................................................................................................................... 34

1.4.2 The NSDF’s Purpose, Focus and Content .............................................................................................. 34

1.4.3 The NSDF’s Theory of Change ............................................................................................................ 35

1.5 Document Structure ................................................................................................................................. 38

**PART TWO: The Draft NSDF Preparation Process** ...................................................................................... 39

2.1 Introduction .............................................................................................................................................. 40
PART TWO: National Spatial Development Phase

2.2 Preparatory Work and Research Phase

2.3 Spatial Analysis and Proposals Phase
   2.3.1 Foundational Work
   2.3.2 Preliminary Sharing and Testing

2.4 Draft NSDF Phase

2.5 Cabinet Submission Phase

PART THREE: National Spatial Development Shapers

3.1 Introduction

3.2 Demographic Shifts, Dividends, Vulnerabilities and Diversity

3.3 Urbanisation, the Pursuit of a Better Life and a Desire for Quality Urban Living and Spaces

3.4 Ruralisation and the Need for Decisive and Sustainable Rural Development and Agrarian Reform

3.5 Natural Resource Limitations, a Move Away from Ecosystem Destruction, Pollution and a National Water Security Crisis

3.6 Climate Change Implications, Regional Adaptation and Mitigation

3.7 Land Reform

3.8 Dependency on Natural Resource Extraction and Related Economic Activities

3.9 Technology, Innovation, Resilience and Disruptions in the Space Economy

3.10 Globalisation, Supra-National Regionalisation, Gateway Nodes and National Connectivity and Integration

3.11 Institutional Weaknesses and Fragmentation and Prospects for National Developmental Action

3.12 Key National Spatial Development Dynamics, Challenges and Opportunities

PART FOUR: National Spatial Development Vision, Logic, Levers and Outcomes
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5.2.1 Spatial Development and Investment Guidance</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3 NSDF Sub-Frame 1: National Urban Network</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.1 Spatial Development and Investment Guidance</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.2 National Urban Network: Spatial Development and Investment Priorities</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.3 National Urban Development Corridors and Growth Regions: Spatial Development and Investment Priorities</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.4 National Action and Key Role-Players</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4 NSDF Sub-Frame 2: National Resource Production Regions</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4.1 Spatial Development and Investment Guidance</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4.2 National Resource Production Area: National Spatial Development and Investment Priorities</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4.3 National Action and Key Role-Players</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5 NSDF Sub-Frame 3: National Connecting and Movement Infrastructure</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5.1 Spatial Development and Investment Guidance</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5.2 National Connectivity and Movement Infrastructure: National Spatial Development and Investment Priorities</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5.3 National Action and Key Role-Players</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.6 NSDF Sub-Frame 4: National Ecological Infrastructure and Natural Resource Base</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.6.1 Spatial Development and Investment Guidance</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.6.2 National Ecological Infrastructure and Natural Resource Base: National Spatial Development and Investment Priorities</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.6.3 National Action and Key Role-Players</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.7 National Spatial Action Areas</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.7.1 Introduction</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.7.2 NSAA 1: National Transformation Corridors</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.7.3 NSAA 2: Central Innovation Belt</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.7.4 NSAA 3: National Resource Risk Areas</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.7.5 NSAA 4: National Urban Regions</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.7.6 NSAA 5: Arid-Innovation Region</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.7.7 Implementation: Roles and Responsibilities</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.7.8 National Risk of Non-Action</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PART SIX: Implementation Framework</strong></td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introduction</strong></td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Objective Two: Communication of Shared Action</strong></td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Objective Three: Institutionalisation of the NSDF into Centre of Government Planning, Budgeting, Implementation, Monitoring and Evaluation System</strong></td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Objective Four: Embedding Implementation and Collaborative Action</strong></td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Objective Five: Sector Specific and Spatially Targeted Priorities Actioned</strong></td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NSDF Review</strong></td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Implementation Planning</strong></td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Preparing for Success</strong></td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rolling out the NSDF</strong></td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Implementation, Monitoring and Evaluation System</strong></td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Part Seven: Conclusion</strong></td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bibliography</strong></td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>List of Figures</strong></td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**List of Figures**

Figure 1: The National Transformation Logic ................................................................. 25
Figure 2: The NDPs Proposed National Schema for Spatial Targeting .................................. 29
Figure 3: The Role of the NSDF within the ‘Family’ of Strategic and Sector Plans of Government .......................................................... 37
Figure 4: Document Structure ............................................................................................ 38
Figure 5:: NSDF Preparation Process .................................................................................. 40
Figure 6: NSDF 2019 Development and Building Blocks to support Impact and Alignment .......... 42
Figure 7: People and Places – Population and Settlement Dynamics .................................... 46
LIST OF TABLES

Table 1: An Overview of the Actions required in the National Spatial Action Areas in accordance with the four Sub-Frames ................................................................. 142
Table 2: Coastal Transformation Corridor population and economy ...................................................... 148
Table 3: Coastal Transformation Corridor affected municipalities ................................................................................. 148
Table 4: Eastern Escarpment Transformation Corridor population and economy ............................................................ 149
Table 5: Eastern Escarpment Transformation Zone affected municipalities ................................................................. 149
Table 6: Northwestern Transformation Corridor and economy .............................................................................. 151
Table 7: Northwestern Transformation Zone Affected Municipalities ............................................................. 151
Table 8: Central Innovation Belt population and economy .............................................................................. 154
Table 9: Central Innovation Belt affected municipalities .................................................................................. 155
Table 10: Upper Vaal River Catchment population and economy ................................................................. 158
Table 11: Upper Vaal River Catchment affected municipalities .............................................................................. 158
Table 12: Olifants River Catchment population and economy .......................................................................... 160
Table 13: Olifants River Catchment affected municipalities .................................................................................. 160
Table 14: Waterberg River Catchment population and economy .............................................................................. 161
Table 15: Waterberg River Catchment affected municipalities .............................................................................. 161
Table 16: uMngeni River Catchment population and economy .............................................................................. 162
Table 17: uMngeni River Catchment affected municipalities .................................................................................. 162
Table 18: Berg River Catchment population and economy .............................................................................. 163
Table 19: Berg River Catchment affected municipalities .................................................................................. 163
Table 20: Breede River Catchment population and economy .............................................................................. 164
Table 21: Breede River Catchment affected municipalities .................................................................................. 164
Table 22: Greater Gauteng Region population and economy ................................................................. 167
Table 23: Greater Gauteng Region affected municipalities ......................................................................... 167
Table 24: Greater Cape Town Region population and economy ................................................................. 168
Table 25: Greater Cape Town Region affected municipalities ................................................................. 168
Table 26: Greater eThekwini Region population and economy ................................................................. 169
Table 27: Greater eThekwini Region affected municipalities ................................................................. 169
Table 28: Arid-innovation Region population and economy ....................................................................... 172
Table 29: Arid-Innovation Region affected municipalities ....................................................................... 173
Table 30: Implementation Roles and Responsibilities ............................................................................ 174
Table 31: Risks on Non-Action in/on the NSAAs ............................................................................... 179
ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

This Draft National Spatial Development Framework is the first of its kind to be compiled in South Africa. Prepared in accordance with the provisions of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, 2013, this was done in a consultative and collaborative way.

The invaluable contributions, inputs and guidance from officials from national sector departments, provincial officials tasked with planning, development, human settlements and cooperative governance, municipal officials, government agencies and associations, professional bodies, NGOs and technical experts in a wide range of fields, are hereby gratefully acknowledged.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BEPP</td>
<td>Built Environment Performance Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CBA</td>
<td>Critical Biodiversity Area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CBO</td>
<td>Community-Based Organisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CEF</td>
<td>Capital Expenditure Framework</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoGTA</td>
<td>Departments of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSIR</td>
<td>Council for Scientific and Industrial Research</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSP</td>
<td>Cities Support Programme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAFF</td>
<td>Department of Agriculture Forestry and Fisheries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHS</td>
<td>Department of Human Settlements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMR</td>
<td>Department of Mineral Resources</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DoE</td>
<td>Department of Energy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DORA</td>
<td>Division of Revenue Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DoT</td>
<td>Department of Transport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DPME</td>
<td>Department of Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRDLR</td>
<td>Department of Rural Development and Land Reform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DWS</td>
<td>Department of Water and Sanitation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESA</td>
<td>Ecological Support Area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GVA</td>
<td>Gross Value Added</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDA</td>
<td>Housing Development Agency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HSMSP</td>
<td>Human Settlements Master Spatial Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICT</td>
<td>Information and Communication Technologies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDP</td>
<td>Integrated Development Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDZ</td>
<td>Industrial Development Zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IGRFA</td>
<td>Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act, 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IGR</td>
<td>Intergovernmental Relations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ITMP</td>
<td>Integrated Transport Master Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IUDF</td>
<td>Integrated Urban Development Framework</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LUMS</td>
<td>Land Use Management System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M&amp;E</td>
<td>Monitoring and Evaluation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEC</td>
<td>Member of the Executive Council</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MFMA</td>
<td>Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIIF</td>
<td>Municipal Infrastructure Investment Framework</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acronym</td>
<td>Full Form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MinMec</td>
<td>Ministers’ and MECs’ Forum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSA</td>
<td>Municipal Systems Act, 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSDF</td>
<td>Municipal Spatial Development Framework</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSP</td>
<td>Master Spatial Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTSF</td>
<td>Medium Term Strategic Framework</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NATMAP</td>
<td>National Transport Master Plan 2050</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NDoT</td>
<td>National Department of Transport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NDP</td>
<td>National Development Plan 2030</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NGO</td>
<td>Non-Governmental Organisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NGP</td>
<td>New Growth Path</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIP</td>
<td>National Infrastructure Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NPC</td>
<td>National Planning Commission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NPO</td>
<td>Non-Profit Organisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSAA</td>
<td>National Spatial Action Area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSDF</td>
<td>National Spatial Development Framework</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSDP</td>
<td>National Spatial Development Perspective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NT</td>
<td>National Treasury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTP</td>
<td>National Transport Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFMA</td>
<td>Public Finance Management Act, 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PICC</td>
<td>Presidential Infrastructure Coordination Committee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PGDS</td>
<td>Provincial Growth and Development Strategy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PGM</td>
<td>Platinum Group Metals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLTF</td>
<td>Provincial Land Transport Framework</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRASA</td>
<td>Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSDF</td>
<td>Provincial Spatial Development Framework</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RDP</td>
<td>Reconstruction and Development Programme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RSDF</td>
<td>Regional Spatial Development Framework</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SACN</td>
<td>South African Cities Network</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SADC</td>
<td>Southern African Development Community</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SALGA</td>
<td>South African Local Government Association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SANBI</td>
<td>South African National Biodiversity Institute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SANRAL</td>
<td>South African National Roads Agency SOC Ltd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SDF</td>
<td>Spatial Development Framework</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SDGs</td>
<td>Sustainable Development Goals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEA</td>
<td>Strategic Environmental Assessment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEIAS</td>
<td>Socio-Economic Impact Assessment System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Full Form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEZ</td>
<td>Special Economic Zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIP</td>
<td>Strategic Infrastructure Programme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SKA</td>
<td>Square Kilometre Array</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPLUMA</td>
<td>Spatial Planning and Land-Use Management Act, 2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOE</td>
<td>State-Owned Enterprise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StepSA</td>
<td>Spatial and Temporal Evidence Platform for SA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SWSA</td>
<td>Strategic Water Source Area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOD</td>
<td>Transit-Oriented Development</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TWG</td>
<td>Technical Working Group</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GLOSSARY OF TERMS

Apartheid
A political system and its laws and policies directed towards the separation of different ethnic or racial groups. Spatially, apartheid involved the physical separation of the four racial groups according to the Population Registration Act of 1950 into so-called “Group Areas” according to the Group Areas Act of 1950. A system of ethnically-based “Bantustans” for Black South Africans was also established.

Bantustan
Areas reserved for African occupation under the Apartheid government. Approximately 13% of the total area of South Africa was divided into ten such Bantustans and were given some degree of self-rule, but always subject to the wishes and needs of the Apartheid government. While these areas were incorporated back into South Africa at the dawn of democracy in 1994, they still suffer the consequences of long-term neglect, isolation and poverty.

Critical Biodiversity Areas and Ecological Support Areas
Critical Biodiversity Areas (CBAs) and Ecological Support Areas (ESAs), are natural areas of critical importance for ecological sustainability, and should be kept in their natural, or at least semi-natural, state. Critical Biodiversity Areas (CBAs) are divided into two sub-categories: CBA1 and CBA2. CBA1s are irreplaceable, which means that there are no other places in the landscape where the conservation and ecological objectives associated with those CBAs can be met. In CBA2s, there may be some options for meeting the conservation and ecological objectives associated with those CBAs in other parts of the landscape. However, this can only be done at the cost of losing some of the spatial efficiency of the network of CBAs. If a CBA2 is lost and an alternative natural area elsewhere is identified to become part of the CBA network, the alternative area is likely to be larger, increasing the size of the CBA-network as a whole. Areas identified as ESAs should be kept in at least semi-natural condition, i.e. with their basic ecological functioning still intact.

City
A human settlement characterised by (1) large and generally diverse communities of people living at high residential densities, (2) a variety of employment opportunities, and (3) high-intensity business and commercial areas.

Concentration
Concentration of people and activities refers to (1) a higher density of people, and (2) a higher intensity and mix of activities in a specific place, area or region. Generally, such concentration supports the development and sustenance of agglomeration economies. This can take the form of urbanisation economies (where cost decreases as total output of an urban area increases) or localisation economies (where costs decrease as firms in a specific industry increase output).

Decentralisation
The flow of people and economic activities from an urban centre or node to outlying (suburban and/or peri-urban) areas or nodes.

Densification
The process of increasing the number of people living in a specific area to ensure that (1) better use is made of movement infrastructure, services, ICT networks and amenities by a greater number of people, and (2) the need for expansion of existing grids, networks and services is reduced.
**Development Corridor**

Integrated linear networks of infrastructure and economic activity. Development corridors typically fulfil a variety of multiple, complex functions, such as (1) the movement of people and freight, (2) facilitating trade between areas, (3) flows of information, (4) flows of services such as water and gas, and (5) facilitating tourism. Supportive functions may be located in corridors, e.g. logistics. Development corridors often also include a human settlement and/or economic activity component, e.g. higher-density transit-oriented mixed-use development or industrial development adjacent to, or along the main transport routes.

**Diversification**

The process of introducing and/or allowing a greater mix of land uses in an area, to (1) boost local people-to-people service economies, stimulate co-production of knowledge innovation and create jobs, (2) reduce the need for travel and travel distances, (3) bring more vibrancy and life to an area; (4) enhance social interaction and cohesion, and (5) make better use of available land.

**Ecological Footprint**

A measure of the ‘load’ imposed by a given population on natural systems. The bigger the footprint, the greater the impact.

**Ecological Infrastructure**

Ecological infrastructure refers to naturally functioning ecosystems that generate or deliver valuable services to people, e.g. water catchments, wetlands, riparian zones, coastal dunes, kelp beds or spawning grounds. Ecological infrastructure consists of a network of interconnected structural elements in the landscape and seascape.

**Economic Sectors**

A description of the kind of economic activities in a country, or the activities in which the population of a country are active/working. The following five categories/sectors of economic activity are generally used in this regard: (1) the primary sector, which includes agriculture, mining and other natural resource-based industries; (2) the secondary sector, which entails manufacturing, engineering and construction; (3) the tertiary sector, meaning the service industries; (4) the quaternary sector, which refers to intellectual activities involving education and research; and (5) the quinary sector, which is reserved for the economic activities of high-level decision makers in government and industry. In some instances, including this NSDF, the last two sectors are included in the definition of the tertiary sector.

**Ecosystem**

The dynamic and complex interplay of animal, plant, and micro-organism communities and their non-living environment (soil, water, climate and atmosphere) as a functional unit.

**Ecosystem Services**

The beneficial services that nature provide to people. Ecosystem services are typically grouped into four broad categories: (1) provisioning, including the production of food and water; (2) regulating, including the control of climate and disease; (3) supporting, including nutrient cycles and oxygen production; and (4) cultural, including spiritual and recreational benefits.

**Evidence Mapping**

A structured process of seeking, ordering and making sense of relevant published and unpublished research (i.e. ‘evidence’) to inform the preparation and review of policy and legislation.
Food Security
A condition of having reliable access to a sufficient quantity of affordable and nutritious food, through locally-grown produce and/or imports.

Hinterland
The sparsely populated areas close to an urban settlement or node in which people farm or depend on natural resources for their livelihood, including the villages and small towns that are dispersed throughout these areas.

Human Settlement
A place where people live, work, study and relax. A settlement can range in size from a small number of dwellings grouped together to a large city or groups/conglomerations of cities tied together through dense transport and communication networks.

Infrastructure
The basic equipment, utilities, productive enterprises, installations, and services essential for the development, operation, and growth of human settlements and economic activities. Infrastructure includes items such as roads, utility lines for water, sanitation and electricity, drainage structures and communication technology. A distinction is often made between (1) engineering infrastructure, such as roads, electricity, sewerage, water, and (2) social infrastructure, which can broadly be defined as the construction and maintenance of facilities that support social services, such as health, education, community, welfare support, citizen registration and cultural facilities.

Land-Use Pattern
The land-use pattern is a general description of how land is occupied or used, and how land-uses tend to be distributed across a specific geographic area. In the context of the NSDF, the national land-use pattern is a high-level description of how the (1) population, (2) settlements, (3) economic activities, and (4) natural areas are distributed and systemically-related within the country as a whole.

Land Reform
The process of correcting the historical imbalances in (1) ownership of land, and (2) access to land. It entails three types of intervention by the State, viz. (1) land restitution, meaning the redress of wrongs committed during the colonial and Apartheid eras; (2) land redistribution, meaning the provision of land for residential and economic purposes to those who do not have the means to access land; and (3) tenure reform, meaning the provision of security of tenure.

National Development Paradigm
The overarching set of ideas and beliefs and its associated legal and policy framework, setting out how (1) a country should be developed, (2) its economic relations should be structured, (3) the benefits of its economic system should be shared, and (4) its natural resources should be used and managed.

National Social and Economic Interactions
The dense network of social and economic activities that take place in a country.

National Spatial Development Framework
A long-term national spatial planning instrument with a long-term horizon that (1) is mandated by the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, 2013 (SPLUMA), (2) has to be aligned with the National Development Plan (NDP), and (3) is adopted by Cabinet as official national spatial development policy for implementation throughout the country. As such, it provides (1) an overarching spatial development framework including a set
of principle-driven spatial investment and development directives for all three spheres and sectors of government, meaning ‘where, when, what type, and how much to invest and spend throughout the country’; and (2) a set of strategic spatial areas of national importance from an ecological, social, economic and/or ICT or movement infrastructure perspective, to be targeted by both government and the private sector in the pursuit of strategic national development objectives, or to avert national crises.

National Spatial Development Logic
The approach to, and the way in which national space is used and managed in pursuit of the objectives of the prevailing national development paradigm.

National Spatial Development Pattern
The outcomes of the national spatial development logic of a country in national space. As such, it entails (1) where, how and for whom settlements are built, (2) the land tenure types and land-use patterns in these settlements, and (3) the type, mix, density, intensity and distribution of land-uses in these settlements.

Natural Resource Foundation
The natural resources of a country, consisting of both ecosystem services and sensitive and important ecological systems. These resources need to be defined, mapped and protected, preferably by law, and their utilisation carefully managed for the benefit of the ecological system and the sustenance of future generations.

Node
Nodes are concentrations and clusters of activities of varying intensity and density, and can be either mixed-use or mono-functional (e.g. an office node).

Polycentric system
A functionally integrated system of settlements/nodes of varying size that co-exist and collaborate in mutually beneficial ways, and in doing so, enhance the resilience of the system and its constituent parts. The system allows the provision of a series of social and other services by (1) using the unique qualities of the various settlements/nodes in the system, and (2) harnessing the connections between them.

Protected Area
An area of special natural, ecological, architectural or historic interest that is protected by law. The protected areas referred to in this NSDF are those areas that are officially classified as such in terms of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998.

Rural
Generally regarded as areas outside cities and towns. Economic activity in these areas is in most cases intrinsically tied to natural resource use and/or beneficiation, and consists of agriculture, fishing, forestry, nature conservation, eco-tourism and mining. In South Africa, there are rural areas that are densely populated, but without (1) the distinct and diverse nodal areas of dense economic activity in the secondary and the tertiary sectors, or (2) the amenities typically associated with urban areas. These areas are a remnant of colonial and Apartheid spatial planning and the creation of Bantustans.

Rural Development
The process of improving the quality of life and economic well-being of people living in a rural area, by planned interventions in the area in (1) the ownership and use of land, (2) the provision, maintenance and upgrading
of infrastructure and social services, and (3) the type and intensity of economic activities.

**Rural Edge**

A line that is used to delineate a systemically-integrated area/region that has distinct rural qualities that need to be protected from ‘intruding’ uses that may disrupt or destroy these qualities. Typically, the delineation would be accompanied by (1) a description of the kinds of activities that are permitted within the area/region, and (2) the procedures to apply for uses that are not specified as such. The line may have coordinates and be statutory, meaning it has binding legal power, or be seen as a soft or ‘fuzzy line’, meaning its exact coordinates are not defined, and it is to be used in a planning and policy sense and not as hard, impenetrable physical line.

**Ruralisation**

The process by which (1) people choose to remain in rural areas because there are viable economic opportunities, move back to towns and villages in rural areas from urban areas, and/or build/renovate houses in these areas as ‘homes’ for their current needs, or with a view to retirement, and (2) the State plans for the development of rural areas in a systemic and holistic way as economically viable, ecologically-significant, productive quality living spaces, as opposed to colonial and Apartheid times in which the little investment that was made in these areas was focused on advancing white economic interests in urban areas, and/or the lives and life chances of white people living in rural towns.

**Settlement (also known as ‘Human Settlement’)**

A settlement refers to a place where people live, work, study and relax. A settlement can range in size from a small number of dwellings grouped together, to a large city or groups/conglomerations of cities tied together through dense transport and communication networks.

**Socio-Economic Impact Assessment System (SEIAS)**

A recently introduced government instrument that seeks to enhance the process of formulating policies, Acts and regulations by ensuring (1) alignment of such interventions with national priorities, (2) mitigation of risks, (3) anticipation of unintended consequences, and (4) minimisation of costs and maximisation of benefits.

**Space Economy**

The spatial drivers and spatial manifestations and outcomes of the economic interactions and transactions that (1) are generated in ‘earth/terra-based space’, (2) take place in that space, and/or (3) flow through that space. The size, nature, scale and scope of the space economy of a place/area is related to (1) its unique locational, spatial, ecological, economic, social, institutional, infrastructural, mineral, soils and topographical attributes, culture, and history, and (2) its level of connectedness to, and relations with other places/areas, and the unique attributes and space economies of those places it is connected to, or transacts with.

**Spatial Planning**

The process of making strategic decisions as to (1) how and for what purpose public, communal and private-owned land in an area (it could be a street, town, province, country or continent) is to be used and developed in an environmentally sustainable, economically viable and affordable way, and (2) how these land portions are to be connected to each other through road and rail networks and served with basic service infrastructure (water, electricity and sanitation) and communication networks (cellular, wi-fi and fibre).
Spatial Transformation
The carefully-planned and well-managed process of placing infrastructure, social services and economic activities in settlements in such a way that (1) the segregated spatial patterns inherited from colonial and Apartheid times are broken down, and (2) the inefficiencies, injustices and inequalities in access to opportunities resulting from these past patterns are corrected.

Strategic Water Source Areas
Strategic Water Source Areas (SWSAs) can be described as ‘water factories’ that support growth and development needs that are often a long distance away from the SWSAs themselves. These areas contribute significantly to the overall surface and ground water supply of the country. While Strategic Water Source Areas have been identified by the Water Research Commission (2015), they are not formally protected.

Stressed Catchments
‘Water stress’ occurs when the amount of water used exceeds 10% of renewable resources. Water stress depends on a range of factors and is not simply a shortfall in water availability versus requirement. Water deficits will not be experienced the same over an entire Water Management Area, nor at all times. In some cases, the deficits do not imply that consumptive use exceeds the available water, but that the allowances made for the implementation of the ecological component of the reserve cannot be met fully at present levels of use. Stressed catchments are also impacted upon by ‘water demand/requirement’, which refers specifically to the ‘beneficial, effective and efficient use of water’, which can be improved through, for example, a reduction in water losses.

Supra-National
Refers to (1) ‘regions’, organisations and structures that are created ‘above the nation state’ by two or more countries, e.g. the African Union and the Southern African Development Community, to attend to matters of mutual concern and/or that lie outside the control/reach of a single country, and (2) agreements, protocols, policies, plans and investment frameworks prepared for these bigger supra-national entities.

Sustainable Development
Development that meets the needs of the present generation without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own needs. The definition of sustainable development usually refers to social, economic and institutional components.

Theory of Change
A story of how things, settings or situations can and will be changed through a well-planned and sequenced set of actions and interventions, to bring about a desired goal, situation or state of affairs.

Town
A place where people and services are geographically concentrated in a distinct and identifiable area. While towns can vary in size, they tend to have a smaller population, lower residential densities, fewer employment opportunities and fewer and/or smaller economic activities than cities.

Township
This term has two meanings in the South African context. Firstly, it is a colloquial name given to residential townships which were established during the colonial and Apartheid eras for temporary occupation by Black South Africans on the outskirts of towns and cities, and where only the most
basic of amenities and infrastructure were provided. During colonial times, these townships were called "locations", and sometimes still are, albeit increasingly less so. Secondly, it is the legal name given to new human settlements and extensions to existing settlements in planning legislation, e.g. "Sunnyside Extension 3", dating back to the first Town Planning Ordinances passed in the early 1900s, and also appearing in the more recent Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (2013) (SPLUMA).

Transit-Oriented Development (TOD)

A planned intervention that promotes higher density and mixed-use land development close to significant transit routes. TODs aim to (1) make the best use of land located along such routes, (2) increase ridership/use of public transport on the routes, and (3) promote sustainable urban development.

Urban

A term that refers to a city, being in a city, or ‘of a city’. Urban areas are characterised by (1) large communities living at high residential densities, (2) a variety of employment opportunities, and (3) high-intensity business and commercial areas. The ‘urban-rural distinction’ between cities and towns varies from country to country, and is most often based on a combination of factors related to population size, level of economic output and development density. Generally, large towns are considered as ‘urban’, whereas small towns are most often regarded as ‘rural’. ‘Urban regions’ in the context of the NSDF refer to large and growing, functionally integrated, built-up regions, that are characterised by areas of high residential density and economic intensity where the population exceeds more than two million inhabitants.

Urban Development

The process of improving the quality of life and economic well-being of people living in an urban area through planned interventions in the area in (1) the ownership and use of land, (2) the provision, maintenance and upgrading of infrastructure and social services, and (3) the type and intensity of economic activities.

Urban Edge

A line that is used as a border to distinguish between (1) an area/region that is regarded as part of a city or town, and (2) its surrounding natural or rural area. Its primary purpose is to ‘contain the urban’ and as such, (1) no urban development is permitted, and (2) no municipal services are to be provided outside/beyond the line. As in the case of a rural edge, the line may have coordinates and be statutory, meaning it has binding legal power, or be seen as a ‘fuzzy/soft line’, meaning its exact coordinates are not defined, and it is to be used in a planning and policy sense and not as a hard, impenetrable physical line.

Urbanisation

The process by which an increasing percentage of a country’s population (1) moves to live in large towns and cities with the intention of staying there or in a similar urban area, and not returning to the countryside, and (2) is born in an urban area.

Water Scarce Regions

This construct refers to (1) the ‘climate capability’ of a region, which is a function of the moisture supply, climate constraints and physiological capacity of a region, and (2) the impact of climatic factors on the capability to grow an agricultural crop in a region within a growth season. For the purposes of the NSDF, areas described as ‘Water Scarce Regions’ fall within the ‘low to low-moderate’ climate capability ranges.
EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

This National Spatial Development Framework (NSDF), the first of its kind, seeks to make a bold and decisive contribution to bringing about the peaceful, prosperous and truly transformed South Africa, as articulated in the Freedom Charter, the Reconstruction and Development Programme and the National Development Plan. It does so in full recognition of:

- The stranglehold that the unjust national spatial development paradigms, logics and patterns of the past have placed on our many attempts at breaking the back of poverty, unemployment and inequality;
- The valuable, and often hard lessons we have learnt over the last twenty-five years in our pursuit of national reconstruction, inclusive economic growth and spatial transformation; and
- The necessity for decisive, collaborative and targeted state action in national space, to drive our country towards the shared, inclusive and sustainable future we desire and require.

In accordance with this transformative agenda, and guided by the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013 (SPLUMA), the NSDF consists of seven interrelated parts:

- Part One (1) provides an overview of the background to, need for and role of the NSDF, (2) locates it within the context of the National Development Plan (NDP), and (3) sets out the NSDF’s theory of change to move the country from where we are, to the South Africa we want and need;
- Part Two provides an overview of the process that was followed in the compilation of the NSDF, including (1) the data that was gathered and processed, (2) the work-sessions that were held, and (3) the consultations and engagements that were undertaken;
- Part Three provides a high-level overview of a series of significant national spatial development dynamics, challenges and opportunities that impact upon, and shape both (1) the national development landscape, and (2) our ability to realise our national development goals;
- Part Four (1) puts forward the national spatial development vision of a shared and just South Africa, (2) sets out the ‘shifts’ that must be made in the national spatial development logic based on the objectives and directives of the NDP and the SPLUMA principles, to enable a radical, transformative and decisive change in our national spatial development pattern, (3) puts forward six national spatial development levers to give spatial expression to the national spatial development vision, and support the shifts that need to be made in accordance with the new national spatial development logic, (4) provides a set of five required national spatial outcomes to achieve the national development objectives, as outlined in the NDP, and realise the national spatial development vision and desired national spatial development pattern, as outlined in the NSDF, and (5) gives an indication as to what life would be like in our country by 2050 if the vision is pursued, the necessary shifts are made and the six national spatial development levers are appropriately and effectively used;
- Part Five provides national spatial development and investment guidance in the form of (1) an ideal national spatial development pattern, (2) a supranational spatial development frame, (3) five national sub-frames, and (4) five national spatial action areas, to inform, direct and guide all infrastructure investment and development spending decisions by government and the private sector, to enable us to achieve the desired national spatial development pattern for South Africa in 2050, and in doing so, realise our national development objectives, as set out in the NDP;
- Part Six deals with the implementation of the NSDF, and (1) outlines the measures, approach and actions required to realising our national spatial development vision in a coherent, diligent and systematic way, and (2) provides an overview of the role-players involved in doing so; and
- Part Seven provides a summary of, and conclusion to the NSDF.

While the NSDF recognises the challenges involved in bringing about the necessary changes in planning, budgeting and implementation in and between the three spheres of government, it is also very clear as to the importance in contributing to the joint crafting of our desired and shared future.
PART ONE: Introduction
1.1 Setting the Scene

In his first State of the Nation Address, President Cyril Ramaphosa, in recognition of the exemplary struggle, conquest and spirit of our former President Nelson Mandela, stated:

“In celebrating the centenary of Nelson Mandela, we are not merely honouring the past, we are building the future. We are continuing the long walk he began, to build a society in which all may be free, in which all may be equal before the law and in which all may share in the wealth of our land and have a better life. We are building a country where a person’s prospects are determined by their own initiative and hard work, and not by the colour of their skin, place of birth, gender, language or income of their parents”.

Transitioning a country like South Africa with its dreadful history and stubbornly persistent legacy of the past into a better place for all, is no easy task, as was clearly articulated in the recently released report by the High-Level Panel on the Assessment of Key Legislation and the Acceleration of Fundamental Change, where it states the following:

“Colonialism and apartheid have left South Africa with a deeply divided and inequitable distribution of people and economic activity. This spatial inequality traps disadvantaged communities in poverty and underdevelopment, creates inefficient cities, and robs poor, rural people of secure livelihoods. The Panel makes recommendations that seek to break this damaging spatial pattern that is built on past laws, which marginalised the black majority to the outskirts of the cities and to Bantustans, to preserve key assets, economic opportunities and the wealth of the country for the white minority. The legacy of spatial inequality appears intractable despite the National Development Plan and the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management’s (SPLUMA’s) focus on it. This issue needs an integrated solution that goes beyond the mandate of any one government department or specific level of government.”

The importance of space and land, and their densely interwoven connections to economic development and livelihoods, was also recognised in the Reconstruction and Development Programme in 1994, where it was argued that:

“No political democracy can survive and flourish if the mass of our people remains in poverty, without land, without tangible prospects for a better life. Attacking poverty and deprivation must therefore be the first priority of a democratic government.”

1.2 The National Transformation Logic & Space

Encapsulated in the three preceding powerful statements, is a ‘national transformation logic’ with a distinct spatial dimension (see Figure 1), which can be expressed as follows:

Our new, post-Apartheid ‘national development paradigm’, which includes (1) a set of progressive national economic, social and spatial development objectives, values and ideals, and (2) an enabling and supporting national legal and policy framework, seeks to bring about
a new, post-Apartheid future. Realising this desired future, however, requires a new, post-Apartheid ‘national spatial development logic’ and ‘national spatial development vision’.

Our current ‘national spatial development pattern’ is an outcome of the ‘national development paradigms’ and the ‘national spatial development logics and visions’ of (1) the colonial and Apartheid eras, as well as (2) the first two decades of democracy. This ‘national spatial development pattern’ is an enabler, driver and facilitator of a multitude of ‘national social and economic interactions’. These interactions, in turn, (1) shape the ‘national spatial development pattern’, either reinforcing and sustaining it, or changing it, and (2) confirm, or question the objectives, values, ideals, laws and policies that constitute the new, post-Apartheid ‘national development paradigm’, and prompt its amendment, as and where required.

Moving from our current, undesirable ‘national spatial development pattern’ to the desired new, post-Apartheid ‘national spatial development pattern’, requires targeted and sustainable interventions in all four the components of the ‘national transformation logic’, in accordance with a credible and robust ‘theory of change’, which the NSDF puts forward.

Before getting to the NSDF’s theory of change and the targeted, coordinated and integrated (1) infrastructure investment and (2) social and economic development expenditure it requires, it is important to get a sense of (1) what has been done, and (2) what we need to start doing, stop doing, do more of, and do less of. This is done in the following section (Section 1.3), which in turn is followed by a section (Section 1.4.3) in which the NSDF’s theory of change is set out.

**Figure 1: The National Transformation Logic**
1.3 Taking Stock: National Spatial Development and the need for a NSDF

In this section, the following are considered: (1) where we come from and what needs to be undone, (2) what we have done and accomplished, and (3) what more, or what else still needs to be done and undone. This assessment is used to decide what changes we need to make, and the way in which the NSDF intends doing so.

1.3.1 Where do we come from and what needs to be done and undone?

In engaging the issues of ‘space’, ‘spatial planning’ and ‘land’, it is important to recognise the spatial objectives and logic of the colonial and Apartheid Eras, and their different, but equally divisive, underlying economic and social logics.

(a) The Colonial Era

In terms of the colonial national development paradigm, all economic activities (hunting, farming and mining) were done on land annexed by force, or through unfair ‘deals’ that benefitted the colonial empire. The resulting national spatial development logic consisted of railroads connecting mines and large farming clusters in the interior to harbours at the coast. From here, (1) commodities were exported, and (2) imports (primarily manufactured goods) were received and carried by rail into the interior. This logic laid the foundation for the country’s infrastructure development pattern.

With the discovery of gold and diamonds, largely unplanned settlements sprang up. In accordance with the prevailing colonial development paradigm, these settlements were developed with only the benefit of the colonists in mind. The indigenous population was (1) forcefully removed from their land to make place for the economic activities and related settlements, and (2) economically coerced though taxation and loss of land, to provide labour to white-owned farms, mines and industries to make a living.

Land use and land development decisions were made only with the benefit of the colonists in mind. Spatial planning legislation and policy was ad hoc and responded to the immediate needs for regulation, order and colonial exploitation and accumulation. In the rapidly-emerging towns and cities, the resulting national spatial development pattern consisted of racially-separated settlements in which white people enjoyed (1) a privileged status, and (2) by and large, decent housing conditions. Black people were denied choice, dignity and respect, and treated as objects to support production by providing their labour at very low wages, and forced into so-called “locations” on the outskirts of these settlements.

(b) The Apartheid Era

The coming to power of the National Party in 1948, and the subsequent introduction of the racist national development ideology/paradigm of “Apartheid” brought about a new, carefully-conceived, all-encompassing set of laws and policies focused on systematic racial segregation, exclusion and suppression. These laws and policies (1) built on, (2) reinforced the exclusionary and exploitative national spatial development logic, and (3) entrenched and deepened the unjust and fragmented national spatial development pattern of the colonial era. However, in contrast to (1) the earlier settler logic, ‘a new country’ was now being crafted for the exclusive use and advancement of a white ‘South African’ minority, and (2) the earlier colonial era, indigenous Africans were now not only viewed as a source of cheap labour, but also
an increasingly vocal and numerically superior threat to ‘the new country’ and its white minority. To overcome this threat and develop the country, (1) the use of land and (2) the spatial relation of land-uses to each other, became of strategic importance. The resulting ‘survive, suppress and rule’ Apartheid national spatial development logic entailed the location of ‘labour’ as far away as possible from the country’s economic hubs, but still within ‘economically-feasible exploitation distance’, i.e. as far away as the cost of rudimentary mass transport would permit. This hideous pursuit at one point even entailed the Apartheid planners considering locating “the next Soweto in the Karoo and transporting ‘labour’ on a daily base by high-speed train to the then Pretoria-Witwatersrand-Vaal Triangle industrial and mining core”. At the same time, increasingly draconic measures were introduced to destroy any black economic endeavour that could compete with white mining, farming, manufacturing and retail activities and interests. Again, land was paramount in this pursuit, with (1) areas reserved for Black South Africans being placed ever-further away (“in the periphery”) from areas of opportunity (“the core”), (2) large-scale forced removals of Black South Africans from where they were trying to access the opportunities offered by urban South Africa, or trying to set up businesses in these areas, and (3) areas set aside for Black occupation denied of any amenity or opportunity for economic activity.

In contrast to the earlier colonial era, national spatial development planning became the key means and driver for the creation and deepening of the segregated and unequal apartheid state and country: It was a country solely planned and built for the enjoyment and advancement of a small white minority. The black majority, in turn, were either (1) temporarily housed in “locations/townships”, or (2) forced to stay in ethically-based Bantustans/homelands, and their movement to and from these rural areas to urban areas forcefully regulated through deeply oppressive measures, including the infamous passbook system.

Apartheid spatial planning and land allocation was not, as in colonial times, a reactive response to land-related crises as and when they arose; it was a core component and driver of the creation and organisation of the racist social, economic and national spatial development logic of the Apartheid State.

Over time, white South Africans living in towns and cities in Apartheid South Africa, simply by owning land, saw their land ‘go’ from ‘land’ to ‘property’. This occurred through (1) the carefully planned parcelling, surveying and registration of such land, (2) the servicing of this land with public infrastructure (including social infrastructure such as schools and hospitals for whites), and (3) the protection of the value and amenity of such ‘properties’ and the suburbs in which they were located through town planning legislation and building regulations. Through (1) spatial planning and (2) land use control, white South Africans who owned land, gained ‘property’, i.e. ‘land with a monetary value and with the potential to increase such value’. From this base, white South Africans were able to access opportunities in towns and cities, attend well-resourced, good schools, and enter the job market in these or similar such places. In doing so, reproducing the unjust social, economic and spatial development pattern of wealth and privilege developed under the Apartheid system.

Black South Africans, in turn, who were able to get access to land, or retain access to land, were at best left with land that had little value to start with and quickly dwindled in value, due to (1) the spatial location of such land, and (2) the low spatial quality and lack of complimentary land-uses, amenities and economic activities in surrounding areas. It was a case of planned, orchestrated and forcefully implemented ‘negative, destructive spatial planning’. It actively disempowered Black South Africans, making them worse off, and destroyed the attributes and potential for any increase in property value that might have accrued to them.
This is the dreadful national spatial development pattern that democratic South Africa inherited in 1994 – the outcome of more than 300 years of unequal spatial investment and planning. It was, however, also the spatial platform (1) on which, and (2) from which the country’s space economy and society had to be transformed and a new country built.

1.3.2 What have we accomplished and what more needs to be done?

Over the past twenty-five years, government has introduced several acts, policies and programmes aimed at redressing the spatial legacies of colonial and Apartheid rule. In most cases, these were directed at the municipal level, with the newly created municipalities expected to pit their limited ‘local’ planning and financial powers against the spatial legacy of centrally-orchestrated and implemented apartheid spatial planning and land-use allocation. In most instances, the impacts were minimal. Old patterns were often reinforced, as new developments (such as RDP housing) were built in peripheral areas on ‘readily available and cheap land’. At the same time, the privileged spaces of Apartheid largely remained ‘as is’, with the racial integration that took place, focused in former white suburbs and new middle-to-higher income (1) extensions to larger towns and cities, and/or (2) gated/barricaded enclaves primarily in secondary cities and metropolitan areas.

In the national sphere, the Reconstruction and Development Programme Office explored the idea of a National Spatial Development Framework (1995-1996). Resistance from national sector departments and provincial governments, who did not want their infrastructure investment and development spending proposals interfered with, resulted in this plan being dropped. Following on from this, the Office of the Deputy President (and later the Presidency) introduced the National Spatial Development Perspective (NSDP) (2000-2007), which sought to rationalise, harmonise and integrate the investment and spending proposals of all government sectors and spheres. The NSDP, in turn, was criticised (1) as being “neo-liberal, urban-focused and anti-rural”, and (2) of “taking a too narrow a view of development potential”. The NSDP was never used as envisaged and fell out of favour.

Not much happened in the national planning space after the demise of the NSDP until (1) the publication of the Green Paper on National Strategic Planning in 2009, (2) the appointment of the first National Planning Commission (NPC) in 2010, and (3) the subsequent preparation and adoption of the 2030-National Development Plan (NDP) in 2012.

(a) The 2030-National Development Plan (NDP)

The NDP, is an all-encompassing comprehensive national development plan that is grounded in:

- The ideals of the Freedom Charter;
- The tenets of the Reconstruction and Development Programme (RDP); and
- The principles and directives of our Constitution.

The NDP (1) speaks to the multitude of needs and challenges facing the country, their underlying causes and the factors inhibiting change, and (2) provides detailed guidance on responding to all of these. To address these challenges, which are all located in the inherited colonial and apartheid space economy, the NDP puts forward a series of proposals resting on “six pillars”, i.e.:

- Uniting all South Africans around a common programme to achieve prosperity and equity;
- Promoting active citizenry to strengthen development, democracy and accountability;
• Bringing about faster economic growth, higher investment and greater labour absorption;
• Focusing on the key capabilities of people and the state;
• Building a capable and developmental state; and
• Encouraging strong leadership throughout society to work together to solve problems.

The NDP recognises that overcoming our triple challenges of inequality, unemployment and poverty lies in transforming our physical space. In doing so, it recognises that tackling the triple challenges means:

• Fundamentally disrupting and undoing inherited and persisting (1) colonial and apartheid economic, social and spatial investment logics, and (2) their resultant spatial forms and land-use patterns, which in turn impede inclusive economic growth and spatial transformation;
• Making radical changes in and to space; and
• Introducing a national inclusionary economic growth and spatial transformation-focused investment and spending logic that all spheres and sectors of government can (1) buy into, (2) drive forward, and (3) be assessed on in terms of the outcomes of their actions.

The NDP furthermore recognises that while transformation-focused action is required throughout our country, and in every sector and sphere of government, it is only through radical and decisive intervention that is coherently planned for, and managed at the national scale, that we stand a chance at (1) disrupting the Apartheid spatial logic and space economy, and (2) overcoming the inequities, isolation, fragmentation and costly and disruptive travel distances brought about by colonialism and Apartheid.

It is especially Chapter 8 of the NDP – “Transforming Human Settlement and the National Space Economy” – that makes specific reference to the need for a “national spatial development framework”. Such a framework, it holds, must optimise, integrate and coordinate the energies and economic impacts of the strategic interventions in national space. Such ‘national spatial framing’, in turn, is recognised as of crucial importance, given the significance of space and access to land in (1) bringing about transformation at scale, and (2) ensuring that people and places benefit from this intervention. The chapter also includes a “proposed national schema for spatial targeting” (see Figure 2) and (1) sets out a series of directives for such a framework, and (2) proposes that it be provided for in national legislation.

*Figure 2: The NDPs Proposed National Schema for Spatial Targeting*
Following on from this guidance, government prepared spatial and land-related policy and legislation that speaks to, and gives further expression to (especially) Chapter 8 of the NDP. These instruments, which cover (1) settlement planning, (2) place-making, and (3) land-use and land-use management, are the 2016-Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF) and the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, 2013 (SPLUMA).

(b) The Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF)“

The IUDF, South Africa’s national urban policy, takes as one of its key drivers the NDPs requirement that South Africa should see meaningful and measurable progress in the pursuit of more functionally integrated, balanced and vibrant settlements. It builds on, and responds to a variety of chapters in the NDP, but notably Chapter 8. This is evident in its guiding vision of “liveable, safe, resource-efficient cities and towns that are socially integrated, economically inclusive and globally competitive, and where residents actively participate in urban life”.

The IUDF puts forward a “new deal” for South Africa’s cities and towns, which it sees as being on a continuum, ranging from the very large metropolitan regions to the smallest towns in rural South Africa. This new deal entails (1) maximising the potential of urban areas, and (2) integrating planning, budgeting and investment in such a way that it improves and enhances urban form and improves the performance or urban areas. The IUDF makes a strong case for:

- Working with and sharing the urban spaces built up during colonial and Apartheid times; and
- ‘Retrofitting’ our urban spaces to optimise their footprint and produce compact, coordinated and well-connected cities and towns.

The IUDF puts forward “four strategic goals” for all urban areas, i.e. (1) spatial integration, (2) inclusion and access, (3) growth, and (4) governance, and proposes “nine policy levers” to achieve these goals. These are:

- Integrated urban planning and management;
- Integrated transport and mobility;
- Integrated and sustainable human settlements;
- Integrated urban infrastructure;
- Efficient land governance and management;
- Inclusive economic development;
- Empowered active communities;
- Effective urban governance; and
- Sustainable finances.

The IUDF furthermore introduces three “cross-cutting priorities” that are to be used in the conceptualisation and implementation of the nine policy levers. These are: (1) rural-urban interdependency, (2) urban resilience, and (3) urban safety. While making strong, guiding statements in the pursuit of shared, inclusive, resilient and liveable urban settlements, the IUDF cautions against a one-size-fits-all approach. Instead, it recognises that South Africa has different types of cities and towns that perform different roles, and have different requirements.

The IUDF has a multi-faceted implementation plan, including short-term interventions. These require the active participation of a range of stakeholders, including all three spheres and sectors of government, the private sector, NGOs, NPOs and local community organisations. The IUDF is also being used to prepare South Africa’s “Localisation Framework” for implementation of the global Urban Agenda – in this way advancing the global pursuit of SDG Goal 11: “Make cities and human settlement inclusive, safe, resilient and sustainable”.
(c) The Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013 (SPLUMA)

SPLUMA was introduced to “provide a framework for spatial planning and land use management” in South Africa. As such, it not only seeks to attend to and rectify the fragmented, unequal and unfair apartheid planning system inherited from the Apartheid era, but also its consequences in space. As in the case of the IUDF, this means the active pursuit of (1) spatial transformation and (2) social and economic inclusion, to ensure equal access for all to the services, amenities and opportunities that well-planned, well-functioning and well-managed urban and rural settlements offer. Core in this regard is the introduction of single, uniform spatial planning and land use management systems in municipal areas that include places previously excluded from such systems. Being framework legislation, it seeks to provide “principles, guidance and norms and standards” for planning in the provincial and municipal spheres of government. The five “principles”, which must be adhered to, pursued, and observed in all actions undertaken in terms of the Act, are “spatial justice, spatial sustainability, efficiency, spatial resilience and good administration”.

SPLUMA furthermore:

- Mandates the preparation of “Spatial Development Frameworks” (SDFs) by all three spheres of government, including the “National Spatial Development Framework”;
- Provides for the preparation of “Regional Spatial Development Frameworks”; and
- Distinguishes between (1) spatial planning and (2) land use management, and establishes a link between the two.

Being located within the Constitutional realm of cooperative governance, these frameworks are not positioned in a hierarchical order, but instead as interdependent planning instruments that require intergovernmental collaboration and integration in their preparation, review and implementation.

(d) Summary

Assessing what has been done and accomplished over the last twenty-four years in terms of the National Transformation Logic (Section 1.2 and Figure 1), the verdict clearly is that much has been done:

With regards to the national development paradigm, the (1) Constitution and (2) Cabinet-adopted NDP provide the foundation, and strategic direction for government to respond to our inter-related triple challenges of inequality, unemployment and poverty. These are supported by a series of (1) enabling acts and policies, (2) solid sector plans and programmes, and (3) strategic infrastructure investment programmes, which include the New Growth Path, the Industrial Policy Framework and Industrial Policy Action Plans, the Strategic Integrated Projects, the National Transport Master Plan 2050 and a range of national plans for human settlement.

With regards to the national spatial development logic, Chapter 8 of the NDP, and the IUDF and SPLUMA frame, mandate, allow and guide the changes that need to be made in:

- Our space economy, in terms of (1) what we do, where and why, (2) which resources we use, and how we use them, and (3) who participates in, and benefits and gains from these activities; and
• Our settlements, in terms of (1) how, and with what outcomes in mind, we plan and invest as a country, (2) how and where we provide which services, and (3) how we sustain these services.

This they do by enabling:

• The use of spatial development planning to integrate and optimise all public and private sector infrastructure and investment spending proposals in space, both (1) in the national interest, and (2) to the advantage of local spaces and those who live their lives in these spaces; and

• The radical, decisive and sustainable transformation of our settlements into productive, liveable and resilient places for all, through (1) wise spatial planning and land-use planning, development and management, and (2) the provision of access to land, economic opportunities and all the other amenities and opportunities that good, quality settlements offer.

However, when considering the national spatial development pattern, and the national social and economic interactions, and as echoed in numerous government reports, academic papers and the printed and social media, despite these components being in place, the stubborn persistence of the colonial and Apartheid spatial development patterns suggests that something is amiss. While much has been done and achieved in the ambit of legislation and policy, not that much change has been (1) felt in the daily lives of people, or (2) seen on the ground.

Lending from a large evidence base of government reviews, reports, assessments and academic papers, notably the recent High-Level Panel Review and the 2018-World Bank Report on South Africa, it is argued that all of the above explanations are at play. At the same time, another possibility is put forward, i.e. that while there is agreement as to what we want to move from in terms of past national spatial development patterns, there is not clarity and/or agreement as to what the desired post-Apartheid national spatial development pattern should look like. Without such spatial clarity and guidance, public investments are made in accordance with (1) sector-driven objectives, targets and outcomes, and/or (2) place/territorially-based concerns and challenges, without consideration for the national transformative impact.

It is here where the NSDF seeks to intervene…

Given the newness of an intervention like the NSDF for our country, international precedent and experience with such national-level planning instruments is briefly engaged, before moving on to the NSDF.
1.3.3 International Precedent and Experience

Internationally, national spatial planning with typically a twenty to thirty-year time horizon, has primarily been a feature of:

- Smaller European countries, notably the Netherlands and Denmark, and more recently Ireland, Albania, Serbia, Slovenia, Iceland, Estonia, Wales, Scotland, Portugal and Romania;
- Developmental states in Asia, notably China, Singapore, Malaysia and South Korea; and
- African countries at two different stages, i.e. (1) shortly after independence, and, in more recent times, (2) before or during a rapid growth phase as in the case of Ghana, Kenya, Uganda, Rwanda, Namibia, Botswana and Tanzania.

In most cases, such planning is associated with (1) more unitary states where the mandate and role of national planning in such arenas is either not, or less contested, and (2) countries where such planning is viewed in a favourable light due to its link to national economic planning and growth, especially the triggering of such growth. The mood of the time and the ideological home of the national governing party is also important. For example, in times of greater national and/or global support for state involvement in the economy, and/or tighter monetary conditions, such planning has generally been more welcomed. Likewise, the support for spatial planning, and especially national spatial planning, has (1) ebbed in accordance with the election of more pro-market, neo-liberal parties, and (2) risen with the election of parties that hold a more favourable view of state or developmental intervention in the economy.

The mere existence of such national spatial plans, strategies or frameworks has not necessarily meant that they (1) were implemented, or (2) had the desired impact. In many cases, the notion of one ‘super-plan’ imposing itself on the mandates of other sectors in the national tier of government and/or in sub-national tiers of government has not been welcomed. Furthermore, given that such instruments often have coordinating, integrating and guiding functions, and do not have their own budgets, they have struggled to secure buy-in and support. In other cases, (1) failure to fund, or (2) deliberately withholding funding from the entity responsible for the preparation and/or implementation of the instrument, for whatever reason, has seen it have little else but a life on paper and/or a website. Finally, the power, status and ‘popularity’ of the department or entity responsible for the instrument and/or the politician(s) responsible for or involved with it, has played an important role in its acceptance and use.

Where such instruments have worked, this has in most instances been due to:

- The entity preparing it, managing to secure strong support from the outset of the preparation process for the instrument both in and outside of government;
- Political will, coupled with decisive and capable state action;
- A strong and vocal technical lobby of planners, researchers and academics supporting it; and/or
- A clear, tangible need for it, and a prevailing sense amongst the population at large that it could make a meaningful difference in (1) the fortunes of the country, and (2) their lives.
1.4 The NSDF as Tool for National Spatial Development and Transformation

1.4.1 The NSDF’s Mandate

In terms of government policy, Chapter 8 of the NDP calls for the preparation of a “national spatial development framework”. In terms of legislation, Section 5(3)(a) of SPLUMA provides for, and Sections 13(1) and (2) of the Act mandate the Minister to, “… after consultation with other organs of state and with the public, compile and publish a national spatial development framework” and review it at least once every five years.

1.4.2 The NSDF’s Purpose, Focus and Content

Section 13(3) specifies that the National Spatial Development Framework (NSDF) must consider:

- All policies, plans and programmes of public and private bodies that impact on spatial planning, land development and land use management;
- Any matter relevant to the coordination of such policies, plans and programmes that impact on spatial planning, land development and land use management; and
- All representations submitted to the Minister in respect of the framework.

Section 14 sets out the content of the NSDF, and indicates that the framework must:

- Give effect to the development principles and norms and standards set out in the Act;
- Give effect to all relevant national policies, priorities, plans and legislation;
- Coordinate and integrate provincial and municipal SDFs;
- Enhance spatial coordination and land use management activities at national level;
- Indicate desired patterns of land use in the country; and
- Take cognisance of any environmental management instrument adopted by the relevant environmental management authority.

Section 12(1), which also deals with the SDFs of provincial governments and municipalities, specifies that the NSDF must:

- Interpret and represent the spatial development vision of the national sphere of government;
- Be informed by a long-term spatial development vision statement and plan;
- Represent the integration and trade-off of all relevant national sector policies and plans;
- Guide planning and development across all sectors of the national sphere of government;
- Contribute to a coherent, planned approach to spatial development in the three spheres of government;
- Provide clear and accessible information to the public and private sector, and provide direction for investment purposes;
- Include previously disadvantaged areas, areas under traditional leadership, rural areas, informal settlements, slums and landholdings of State-Owned Enterprises and government agencies, and ensure their inclusion and integration into the spatial, economic, social and environmental objectives of the national sphere of government;
- Address historical spatial imbalances in development;
• Identify the long-term risks of particular spatial patterns of growth and development and the policies and strategies necessary to mitigate those risks;
• Provide direction for strategic developments and infrastructure investment, promote efficient, sustainable and planned investments by all sectors, and indicate priority areas for investment in land development;
• Promote a rational and predictable land development environment to create trust and stimulate investment;
• Give effect to national legislation and policies on mineral resources, and the sustainable utilisation and protection of agricultural resources; and
• Consider, and where necessary, incorporate the outcomes of substantial public engagement in the framework.

Section 12(2)(a) specifies that the three spheres of government must participate in the spatial planning processes that impact on each other, to ensure that their plans and programmes are coordinated, consistent and in harmony with each other.

Section 12(2)(b) specifies that the NSDF must guide and inform the exercise of any discretion of, or any decision taken in terms of the Act, or any other law relating to land use and development of land by the national sphere of government.

Section 12(3) specifies that the NSDF must contribute to and give spatial expression to national development policy and plans, as well as integrate and give spatial expression to policies and plans emanating from the various sectors of national government, and may include any “Regional Spatial Development Framework”.

Section 12(6) specifies that the NSDF must outline specific arrangements for prioritising, mobilising, sequencing and implementing public and private infrastructural and land development investment in the priority spatial structuring areas identified in the framework.

In summary, as indicated in Figure 3 (below), the NSDF must, within the broader ‘family’ of strategic and sector plans of government:

• Target and direct all infrastructure investment and development spending decisions by all national sector departments and State-Owned Enterprises (SOEs);
• Guide and align plan preparation, budgeting and implementation across spheres and between sectors of government; and
• Frame and coordinate provincial, regional and municipal spatial development frameworks.

1.4.3 The NSDF’s Theory of Change

Based on (1) the National Transformation Logic as set out in Section 1.2, (2) the gaps and explanations as identified in the stock-taking exercise in Section 1.3, and (3) the legal requirements regarding the NSDF as set out Section 1.4.2, the NSDF’s Theory of Change to move our country to the desired Post-Apartheid future, is as follows:

• Step 1: The existing national development paradigm, including the Constitution, the NDP and the existing legal and policy framework, notably SPLUMA and the IUDF, is used to:
  o Articulate a compelling and persuasive post-Apartheid spatial development logic and identify the 'shifts' from the old and existing logics that this new logic requires; and
  o Craft a strong and credible post-Apartheid national spatial development vision:
• Step 2: The new logic and vision is used together with an analysis of the current and unfolding ‘national spatial development landscape’, to develop a set of national spatial development levers, and craft a desired post-Apartheid national spatial development pattern;

• Step 3: The post-Apartheid national spatial development pattern is used to indicate what actions, interventions and priority actions are required to ensure transition to this desired pattern;

• Step 4: The post-Apartheid national spatial development pattern and interventions and priority actions are used to prepare clear implementation guidance for realising the desired national spatial transformation; and

• Step 5: The spatial development guidance, tasks and actions as set out in the NSDF are implemented, and (1) movement towards the realisation of the desired post-Apartheid national spatial development pattern monitored and assessed, and (2) corrective measures taken as and where required.

The outputs of these steps provide the structure for this document, as set out in Section 1.5.
Figure 3: The Role of the NSDF within the ‘Family’ of Strategic and Sector Plans of Government
1.5 Document Structure

This document has the following parts:

*Figure 4: Document Structure*
PART TWO: The Draft NSDF Preparation Process
2.1 Introduction

The process of preparing the first NSDF for South Africa started in April 2014. The formulation of the Draft NSDF comprised Phases 3 and 4 of the process, as indicated in Figure 5.

Figure 5:: NSDF Preparation Process

2.2 Preparatory Work and Research Phase

The first two phases of the NSDF compilation process started with the preparation of the “NSDF Concept Document” by the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (DRDLR), which set the parameters for the remainder of the process. This was followed by an intensive process of research into thematic areas that (1) influence, and (2) are influenced by, the spatial legacies and dynamics of the South African landscape. The Thematic Research Reports provided the basic diagnostic for the NSDF, and focused on:

- Population dynamics, migration and people;
- Human settlements;
- Social infrastructure;
- Natural resources and the environment;
- Movement and transport;
- The national space economy; and
- Unemployment, labour, education and skills development, with an emphasis on rural development, land reform and agriculture.

At the outset of the NSDF process, the NSDF Technical Working Group (TWG) was established as a multi-stakeholder forum including representatives from (1) national sector departments, (2) Offices of the Premier and provincial sector departments involved in planning, (3) SOEs, and (4) relevant government agencies and organisations.

2.3 Spatial Analysis and Proposals Phase

The third phase of the process, i.e. Spatial Analysis and Proposals, was conducted in a series of work-streams, as follows:

2.3.1 Foundational Work

The focus of this work-stream was to (1) establish the most significant global, national and inter-regional spatial development opportunities and challenges, and (2) develop a draft national spatial vision and set of national spatial development levers. Foundational work was also done for the Socio-Economic Impact Assessment System (SEIAS)-process. Engagements in this phase included (1) NSDF Steering Committee meetings, (2) introductory presentations to the NSDF TWG, (3) expert inputs, (4) bilateral meetings with selected sector departments, and (5) an online survey conducted with planning professionals.
2.3.2 Preliminary Sharing and Testing

The focus of this work-stream was on sharing and testing (1) the list of national opportunities and challenges, and (2) the draft proposals prepared in the Foundational work-stream. With this objective in mind, a ‘Consolidated Draft Discussion Document’ was compiled, to enable (1) a focused discussion with, and (2) the sourcing of inputs, comments and proposals from national and provincial government departments, municipalities, SOEs, the NPC, the South African Local Government Association (SALGA) and stakeholder organisations, such as the South African Cities Network (SACN). Work-sessions were also held with the NSDF TWG and provincial officials responsible for the preparation and review of PSDFs, and submissions made to the NPC.

2.4 Draft NSDF Phase

This phase entailed (1) the preparation of the ‘first Draft NSDF’ based on the outputs of the previous work-streams and the inputs, comments and proposal made during these phases, and (2) structured engagement on the Draft NSDF, as provided for in SPLUMA (see Figure 6). These engagements included:

- A presentation to the NPC;
- A presentation to, and work session with the TWG;
- Provincial workshops in all nine provinces involving stakeholders from municipalities, provincial departments and the private sector; and
- Bilateral engagements with national sector departments.

The Draft NSDF was revised and amended based on (1) further data-gathering and analyses, and (2) inputs and comments made during the engagement sessions, and written submissions received after the events.

It is envisaged that this ‘new Draft NSDF’ will be engaged both further and wider, and include the ‘sixty-day public commenting period’, as prescribed in Section 13(4)(b) of SPLUMA.

2.5 Cabinet Submission Phase

The final phase will entail the preparation of (1) the ‘Final Draft NSDF’ for Cabinet Submission, taking cognisance of public comments and inputs, and (2) the documentation, as required in terms of the SEIAS-process.
Figure 6: NSDF 2019 Development and Building Blocks to support Impact and Alignment

For more detail on the above aspects, please see the Bibliography, the Engagement Report and the Annexure Report.
PART THREE: National Spatial Development Shapers
3.1 Introduction

A wide and diverse range of (1) national spatial development realities and (2) international, national and sub-national trends, flows and patterns impact upon, and shape both the national development landscape, and our ability to realise our national development goals.

Part Three of the NSDF provides some insights into these inter-related national spatial development dynamics, challenges and opportunities. It draws on, and highlights aspects as raised in and by:

- An extensive diagnostic conducted in the earlier stages of the preparation of the NSDF, and captured in a ‘Consolidated Research Report’ (see Section 2.2);
- Supra-national, national and provincial development plans, policies, frameworks and overviews;
- National discourses, newspaper reports, books and book chapters, journal and magazine articles, and published and unpublished research reports; and
- Modelled spatial implications of a series of population growth and climate change scenarios.

The NDP objectives, SPLUMA principles and NSDF vision statement were used in an iterative way as lens to (1) ‘read’ the South African national spatial development and planning landscape, and (2) identify key national spatial development dynamics, challenges and opportunities. From this analysis, ten ‘shapers’ of national spatial settlement and development were put together. These shapers are discussed in Sections 3.2 to 3.12 below. In each case, the scale and extent of ‘the shaper’ and its implications for (1) national space, (2) the national space economy and/or (3) national spatial governance are highlighted, and connections to other shapers highlighted. Interspersed between the ten shapers are a series of thematically-structured ‘Info Charts’ under the following themes:

- People and Places;
- Ecologies, Economies and Spaces;
- Institutions and Services; and
- Movements, Connections and Flows

These charts capture and present in visual form key information pieces and elements, as referred to under the shapers. The section is concluded with a summary (see Section 3.12) of the most significant national spatial development challenges and opportunities extracted from the ten shapers.

3.2 Demographic Shifts, Dividends, Vulnerabilities and Diversity

In the next 31 years, the South African population will grow by at least another 17 million people, from around 58 million people in 2018, to around 75 million by 2050. In addition to a population that will be 30% larger than we currently have, it is anticipated that (1) it will primarily be an urban-based population, and (2) at least 30 million of the 75 million South Africans (40%) are likely to be living below the Minimum Living Level (MLL).

In terms of composition, the very youthful South African population of today (28% of the population is below 15 years of age) will by 2050 still be regarded as young, with 25% of the population below 15 years of age, and 31% between 15 and 34 years of age, and in their primary childbearing years. The share of the population that will be ‘65 years of age and older’ will also have experienced significant growth, by 2050 constituting 8% of the population, i.e. 6 million people, which is nearly
double the 3.2 million people that were ‘65 years of age and older’ in 2018. This group will require increasingly more health and frail care and income support from households, communities and the State. This will of course open up and create a large number of job opportunities for frail and health care workers, many of which may be created in rural areas, if this is where, as anticipated, most of those above 65 years of age will choose to live.

Given that the bulk of the envisaged youthful population will be living in urban areas, it will potentially present the country with a ‘dynamic-triple-dividend’: (1) a large, dynamic, creative and innovative economically active population living at high densities in a few large places, constituting (2) a large, densely connected consumer market for goods and services, and (3) a far more accepting and accommodating approach to difference and diversity, which will be especially important in the large urban conurbations of the future. It is especially the higher densities at which our people will be living, coupled with the greater need to co-produce and collaborate in such spaces, that may create and instil a different view of each other – more accepting and more celebratory of difference, and more mindful of the contribution that different individuals and groups can make to resolving a challenge or problem in an innovative and sustainable way.

This ‘dynamic-triple-dividend’ is, however, not a given, and may not materialise, in which case our youth could become a very volatile and destructive force. Should this youthful population (1) be raised in a caring environment with adequate food, love and care, (2) be well-educated and (3) be well-integrated in society, the ‘full’ dividend is more likely to materialise. Should the opposite prevail, as is currently the case for large numbers of our youth growing up in deeply impoverished rural areas and townships, only parts of the dividend, or none of it at all will be realised, with severely negative consequences. As for the greater acceptance of difference and diversity, should (1) scarcity, and (2) an unwillingness to share the little that is available prevail, this dividend will also not materialise. In such an event, our urban areas could very likely see more of the xenophobia and other forms of hatred of ‘those who are seen to be different’, and this will be to the detriment of our cities transitioning into dynamic cosmopolitan economic powerhouses.

Merely hoping that the dynamic-triple-dividend will materialise by itself, especially given our historically high levels of poverty and inequality, is not a sensible strategy. To realise the ‘full’ dividend will require that it be actively pursued, with the State playing a critical role in this regard. Support for nutrition programmes, housing, care and access to economic opportunities for our youth will need to be attended to. All State plans will also need to be prepared with an emphasis on youth and diversity. At the same time, those national spatial development patterns and settlement forms that will be better at (1) eliciting the dividend and (2) allowing it to flourish, will need to be pursued. These include (1) developing urban settlements at higher densities, (2) greater mixing of land-uses, and (3) greater accessibility to the services that successful, well-connected, dynamic urban areas offer.
Figure 7: People and Places – Population and Settlement Dynamics

Population Characteristics and Settlement Dynamics Based on StatsSA, 2011, 2018; Quantecc 2016, CSIR Town Typology 2018, Vulnerability and Migration Indicators – See Annexure A
Figure 8: People and Places – Population Settlement and Growth Dynamics

Population Growth
Spatial Representation
1996 - 2016

Sparse Settled
Western and Central Region
(Bigger Karoo and Free-State)
Sparsely populated area
Arid and largely extensive farming

Cities and Towns
Home to 79 out of every 100
South Africans while only
constituting 6.9% of the
country’s total land area

Dense Rural Settlements
Home to 18% of South Africans
*Former Homeland Areas
(Apartheid Spatial Legacy)
Still home to 6.75 million people
(almost 13% of SA Population) 20%
increase in service access between
1996-2011, however no change in
number of households living under
minimum living level

Densely Settled Coastal Corridor
(KwaZulu-Natal to Saldanha)
Home to 17.7 million people (almost
32% of Population and 12% of land
area)
Grew with 4.16 million people
1996-2016

Demographic change using CSIR Town Typology, 2018. See Annexure A
Figure 9: People and Places – Demographic Growth Scenarios

2050 POPULATION
(MEDIUM SCENARIO - SETTLEMENT GROWTH WITH NO INTERVENTION)

Demographic modelling and scenarios developed through CSIR, Green Book-project, 2008, using CSIR Town Typology, 2018. See Annexure A

Estimated Population Growth Implications 2016 and 2050:
19 million people,
5 million dwelling units,
664 084ha of land for housing
(area equal to that of City of Tshwane)
1.04 billion m³ water for domestic use
**Figure 10: People and Places - National Land Use**

**NATIONAL LAND USE**

**PRODUCTIVE LAND**

*Land use calculation developed using CSIR Meso-frame and Functional Town Area, 2018. See Annexure A*

**LAND USE STATISTICS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NATIONAL AREA</th>
<th>HA</th>
<th>% of SA</th>
<th>PEOPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Productive Use: Urban and Rural Settlement areas</td>
<td>13 451 600</td>
<td>11%</td>
<td>51 849 267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(CSIR Meso Zone, 7x7 land description, 2017)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Include High Capability Agriculture</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Productive use: Sparsely populated areas</td>
<td>51 572 400</td>
<td>42%</td>
<td>1 757 883</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(CSIR Meso Zone, 7x7 land description, 2017)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Include High Capability Agriculture</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arid zone</td>
<td>41 572 400</td>
<td>34%</td>
<td>668 702</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(CSIR Meso Zone, 7x7 land description, 2017)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyper-Arid Zones</td>
<td>632 900</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>6 661</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(CSIR Meso Zone, 7x7 land description, 2017)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mountains</td>
<td>2 556 200</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>49 414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(CSIR Meso Zone, 7x7 land description, 2017)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protected Areas (DEA)</td>
<td>7 915 500</td>
<td>6%</td>
<td>829 652</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transfrontier Parks (DEA)</td>
<td>4 417 200</td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>630 533</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NATURAL RESOURCE FOUNDATION</th>
<th>HA</th>
<th>% of SA</th>
<th>PEOPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stressed Catchments</td>
<td>15 548 697.85</td>
<td>12.7%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Critical Bio-diversity Areas (SANBI, 2017)</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strategic Water Source Production Areas (Water Research Commission Identified Areas 2017)</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*High Capability Agriculture (Mandela GIS, 2018 – Due to mapping process still being finalised by Department of Agriculture)</td>
<td>3 055 734</td>
<td>2.51%</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OWNERSHIP</th>
<th>HA</th>
<th>% of SA</th>
<th>PEOPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>State Land (DRDLR, 2017) (includes national parks and traditional areas)</td>
<td>21 195 968</td>
<td>17.38%</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traditional Leadership Areas (DRDLR, 2017)</td>
<td>13 989 464.37</td>
<td>11%</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Figure 11: People and Places – Population Vulnerability

Population Characteristics and Settlement Dynamics Based on StatsSA, 2011; Quantec 2016, CSIR Town Typology 2018, Vulnerability and Migration Indicators – See Annexure A
3.3 Urbanisation, the Pursuit of a Better Life and a Desire for Quality Urban Living and Spaces

Urbanisation, meaning both (1) the movement of our people from rural to urban areas, and (2) the increase in the percentage of our population living in urban areas, will continue unabatedly throughout the three decades up to 2050. According to United Nations-estimates, "...71.3% of the South African population will live in urban areas by 2030, reaching nearly 80% by 2050." National population projections for medium and high-growth scenarios (considering population growth as well as international migration patterns) conducted to explore future climate change scenarios, illustrate the need to plan for at least a 30% increase in our urban population by 2050. In the same vein, the CSIR’s ‘Downscaled Settlement Locational Modelling-exercise’ projects that under ‘a scenario with no radical intervention’, approximately 85% of South Africa’s population will be living in urban agglomerations by 2050.

Our three urban regions (Gauteng, Western Cape and eThekwini) will experience the largest increases in population – this being from natural growth, as well as in-migration from South Africa, SADC and further afield. Significant movement will also take place from villages and small towns to larger, better connected towns located on major transport routes where provision of better and more reliable basic services, education, healthcare and policing are, and will remain, important drivers of migration. However, while small towns and dense rural settlements are not expected to see a large population growth, they are also not expected to see a significant population decline in either the medium-scale or high-growth scenarios for population growth in South Africa. As such, both large urban regions and rural areas will require targeted and appropriate government focus and attention.

Given the presence of a young, educated, vocal and demanding urban electorate of around 65 million people by 2050, making good on the promise of a better life for all, will be a major concern for government. This will especially be the case in large urban regions, where these large populations will place huge demands on already over-burdened, collapsing and ageing municipal infrastructure. At the same time, these areas will need to rapidly increase their contribution to the country’s formal economic output and tax income, and become (1) the sites of ‘spatial transformation’ and ‘drivers of inclusive and sustainable economic growth’ at scale, and (2) the incubators of dynamic, creative, and innovative new economies. Municipalities will not be able to carry this burden alone and will require significant financial and technical support from (1) national and provincial government, and (2) the private sector. Long-term planning for urban growth, including the identification of suitable land, land reform planning, land-use management, and the preparation of infrastructure master plans with full life-cycle costing, will be imperative.

Ways of urban life and living are also likely to undergo radical change, with urban inhabitants increasingly (1) seeking, finding and making ways of making a life for themselves, and (2) becoming far more involved in making better quality urban spaces in what will for most be their only home. This ‘drive from below’ will be fuelled by (1) a far more active citizenry, in part driven by necessity, (2) a much smaller ‘large-sized private sector’, severely bruised by dwindling disposable household incomes and a slow-to-change capital-intensive business model unsuited to an increasingly-faster changing business environment, and (3) the scale of the challenge in relation to the State’s finances and capacity to deliver services and assist in this regard. This ‘drive from below’ will also lead to a relaxation of bylaws and (1) far less petty and far more high-level land use regulations, enabling far greater levels of economic activity and agility, and far more organic and inclusive economic growth, (2) far greater diversity in economic activities, housing forms and tenure types, (3) far more horizontal and vertical mixing of land uses, (4) far higher settlement densities, and (5) far more vibrant and lively city streets.
The gaps in State service provision will very likely open up opportunities for entrepreneurial endeavour, notably in the provision of housing, water, energy, health care and education. The greater availability of urban land for settlement, through urban land reform, will also see a rapid increase in the number of new small-scale property developers. Altogether, these new forms of urban living and urban spaces will become the new drivers of innovation, creativity and job creation and societal transformation from below and cement large urban areas as the most important contributors to the South African economy. This will not only be done through the collective endeavours of millions of individual actors and small and micro-sized enterprises in the economy, but also by the contribution of innovative and agile large companies competing successfully in the global economy.

An increase in cross-border trade and the rendering of personal, financial, education and health services in border-region towns, will see an increase in movement by South Africans and citizens from other African countries, to such towns. Given the envisaged changes in urban areas towards places of far greater vibrancy, diversity and respect for difference, and their global connectivity, the larger urban areas will experience significant in-migration of people from primarily other African countries, but also from further afield.

In the sprawling, dense rural areas along (1) the eastern escarpment of the country in Limpopo and Mpumalanga, (2) the eastern KwaZulu-Natal and Eastern Cape coastal strip, and (3) the north-western mining and agricultural region running from the Northwest to the Northern Cape, the trend towards far greater densification in nodes and along routes connecting such nodes, will continue and result in far more concentrated development and the release of agricultural land for productive use in these areas.

Smaller towns in rural areas will also experience sizeable counter-urbanisation, as growing numbers of retiring middle-income South Africans from urban areas will settle for more tranquil lives in the rural parts of our country. This will, in many such settlements, facilitate (1) the construction and upgrading of houses by individuals and families for this anticipated retirement stage, as well as (2) the tailor-made development of housing units catering for this older population in such towns, which will support the growth of a new generation of small-to-medium sized property developers in these towns. The injection of the regular pensions of these new, retired inhabitants will also (1) stimulate the local economy, by creating a new market for local produce and personal and social services, notably the provision of health and frail care services, and (2) provide valuable and stable municipal rates and tax incomes. This move to rural South Africa will also be strengthened and facilitated in many villages and smaller towns by the rapid release of land in such towns through the national land reform programme.

Quality urban living in both urban and rural areas will require just and sustainable access to social services. The provision of such services (1) requires investment in ‘social infrastructure’, i.e. ‘high-quality facilities that are well-equipped, maintained and operated, and staffed to the correct level by well-trained personnel who provide a range of critical social services to the community’, and (2) include the full spectrum of health and education services, citizen registration, welfare support, cultural and sport and recreational facilities. While no comprehensive overview of backlogs in the provision of these services is available at national level, local case-studies show critical shortages and grossly inadequate service delivery in both rural and urban areas. These include (1) poor maintenance of buildings, (2) a shortage of equipment, and (3) critical staff shortages, especially with respect to well-trained and dedicated staff. The projected national population increase to 75 million people by 2050, however, not only means expanded requirements for social facility investment and operation, but also (1) presents an opportunity for meaningful employment in rural towns, and (2) if properly planned and provided, can act as a highly effective and sustainable economic multiplier. The importance of spatial planning to guide targeted social infrastructure investment can, however, not be over-emphasised – establishing a sound spatial-location-logic that optimises human capital...
development with economic impact, is imperative to address inequality and ensure inter-generational justice.

3.4 Ruralisation and the Need for Decisive and Sustainable Rural Development and Agrarian Reform

Currently more than 17 million of our people are estimated to be living in rural settlements across dense and sparsely populated regions – mainly in the former Bantustans. Most of these people live in conditions of severe poverty and vulnerability. Research on these conditions shows that ‘...the deprivation gap between those living in the former homelands and the rest of the country has not narrowed in the period between 2001 and 2011’, meaning that well-intended investment and rural development initiatives for over a decade or more have not significantly changed this picture of relative deprivation in these areas.

However, after (1) hundreds of years of colonial and Apartheid oppression, exploitation, disregard and calculated under-investment, (2) followed by decades of uncoordinated and fragmented investment by successive post-Apartheid governments in rural South Africa, these areas are finally getting the recognition, respect and focused ‘development attention’ they deserve and have been promised since 1994. This trend towards taking rural areas seriously is set to continue and become stronger over the next three decades, as rural areas become recognised as parts of our country that are (1) areas of national significance for surface water and food production and the provision of key national ecosystem services, (2) still ‘home’ to millions of South Africans, many of them highly vulnerable and isolated from the broader national economy, (3) places of retreat, rest and connection with nature and cultural practices, far away from fast-paced urban lives, and (4) sought-after domestic and international tourism and retirement destinations. In terms of State action, focused rural development is set to find expression in (1) targeted agrarian reform, (2) tenure reform, (3) the development of agri-processing and logistic support-hubs, (4) diversification of the local economy, (5) small-town redevelopment and regeneration in accessible locations, (6) public works-led job creation programmes and the roll-out of core government social and municipal services, and (7) the provision of grant support with the building and upgrading of housing, specifically in identified regional development anchors and rural service towns.

Of crucial importance to the realisation of the desired rural development objectives is rural land reform, which will release vast amounts of under-utilised commercial agricultural and State-owned land for use by new entrants to the farming sector, and give the resurgence and upliftment of rural areas a huge impetus. The new rural economy will, however, necessitate the development of a very different local economy in those towns built up over generations and sustained by a model of either large-scale commercial agriculture or subsistence agriculture. New agriculture support entities, cooperatives, equipment, fertilizer, market support, funding and research will need to be introduced in towns in rural areas to support a new type of farmer. Municipalities, who will have to ensure new and appropriate land management in such areas, may also be expected and/or called upon to assist new role-players in the local economy with establishing new agricultural and non-agricultural-related economic activities. In this, they will require very specific support from the national and provincial sector departments responsible for agriculture and rural development, who will themselves also have to take on new roles in the light of the new dawn in rural South Africa.

Rural communities will increasingly also demand better levels and higher speeds of connectivity, both by road and rail, and by broadband. At the same time, demands will be placed on government for the provision of quality social, education, health and police services, placing significant pressure on what will, for at least the next decade, be a severely
constrained fiscus. As alluded to earlier, it is imperative that such services be provided in such places and in such a manner that they (1) have the greatest impact, and (2) are able to service the greatest number of inhabitants. In deciding on sites/locations and service-mixes, the focus should be on serving (1) the youth, and (2) those inhabitants who will elect to retire in rural areas, and who will spend significant amounts of money during their working lives on building and/or maintaining their retirement homes.

3.5 Natural Resource Limitations, a Move Away from Ecosystem Destruction, Pollution and a National Water Security Crisis

Over the last few years, the majority of ordinary South Africans citizens were rudely awakened to the reality that South Africa is a water-scarce country, and not one merely struck or frustrated by occasional droughts. While we have for many years been able to transfer water between catchments with a surplus to areas with a deficit, and maintained the myth of water-abundance, the reality is that the model has run its course and that we no longer have sufficient water left in the system to redistribute if we continue to use water as we did in the past. We will have to employ technology to (1) supplement our water supply, (2) reduce our use, and (3) better manage and distribute piped water.

Should we, however, choose to continue along the economic trajectory that disregards our natural base, and continues to incur huge damage to our natural resources, we will in the very near future become even more aware of, and be confronted with the following realities: (1) dwindling water security and availability, wetland destruction, severely disrupted water catchments and over-utilised and polluted groundwater sources, especially in our mining and commercial agricultural productions areas; (2) highly contaminated and toxic waterbodies and waterways; (3) toxic levels of air pollution through highly noxious industrial activities and the generation of energy through coal-fired power stations; (4) the loss of the very small extent of high-value agricultural land we once had; (5) irreparably damaged ecosystems and loss of the services they provide for all forms of life; and (6) a long and rapidly growing list of extinct species. Furthermore, we will be confronted with the reality that our continued pollution of rivers and streams, soil, air and the oceans around us, is not compatible with our plans to (1) grow our tourism sector, (2) expand our agricultural and agro-processing activities, and (3) make far greater use of the oceans economy. As a country, we will be asked to make hard choices, such as between (1) an environment that sustains us and is not harmful to our lives, and (2) the economic activities and national income that comes from exporting and burning dirty carbons, like coal, and irresponsible, callous and wasteful resource use.

Turning away from this looming ecological disaster will require that trade-offs be made at the national level between (1) noxious and polluting economic activities, and (2) ecosystem health and integrity. At the same time, water demand management, and the behavioural changes and enforcement protocols that emanate from this, will need to be introduced, policed and enforced at municipal level. Irreplaceable natural resources of national significance, irrespective of where they are located, will need to be acknowledged, demarcated and treated as such, so that they can contribute to the well-being of all citizens. Municipalities will have to focus far more so in their land use management functions on protecting such areas, and promote compatible and productive uses that contribute to environmental management and restoration goals.

Likewise, sustainable land development and intergenerational spatial justice will require effective land administration and management, civil society custodianship and strong and efficient governance. This will only be possible if (1) municipal land use management systems are in place,
and (2) municipalities are staffed with competent, dedicated and caring town planning officials and councillors, who cannot be corrupted and who have the will and mandate to act. In addition to this, rehabilitation of degraded land in stressed and degraded catchments (including former mining areas) will need to be done. Mining companies must be held accountable to clean up what they polluted, and regulations in this regard rigorously enforced. Mediation of the fall-out in terms of jobs tied to polluting mining and industrial activities that are distinctive of the ecosystem will have to be done, and job creation in ecologically less-damaging sectors (1) planned for well in advance of mine closures, and (2) actively and adequately provided for.

3.6 Climate Change Implications, Regional Adaptation and Mitigation

Climate change is set to have far-reaching impacts on our country, notably with regards to temperature and rainfall patterns. Temperatures are set to increase by between 1 and 4 degrees Celsius between now and 2050, in primarily the western and north-western parts of the country, while the number of very warm days is set to increase in an equally wide band across the country. Rainfall is set to decrease in a large stretch of the south-western, western and north-western parts of the country, while rainfall is set to increase, but also become more erratic in the central and south-eastern part of the country. These climatic changes will not only have severely detrimental impacts on the highly productive agricultural activities in the western and north-western parts of the country. The towns in these areas, of which most rely heavily on these agricultural economies, will be equally hard-hit, and their residents required to make far less use of water for domestic and economic consumption to keep the agricultural activities going.

Climate change impacts will also render significant parts of the country increasingly hostile to human, animal and plant life, and hard to live in. In addition to this, the likelihood of more veldfires is set to increase, especially so in vast and remote rural areas where municipal services are already thinly spread, and the State’s capacity to deal with such disasters is generally weak. While some of the central and eastern parts of the country may experience more rain, the equally greater degree of uncertainty and intensity of the precipitation will not be conducive to traditional conventional agriculture. Sudden downpours may lead to (1) a greater loss of top soil, and silting up of dams and water canals, and (2) the destruction of rural roads and infrastructure. In urban areas, such sudden and severe downpours could lead to flash-flooding, loss of life and destruction of municipal infrastructure, buildings and property, especially so in cases where these are not well-maintained. In many of our urban areas, it is especially the poor, vulnerable and marginalised inhabitants who live in poor housing that is not well-located, and who are generally not insured, that will disproportionately suffer the impacts of such disasters.

In terms of national land use and settlement patterns, climate change begs serious questions with regards to future human settlement in national space, such as: How will climatic change impact regional development patterns in terms of temperature, liveability, water, food security and the adaptation to viable agricultural practices and commodities? What kind of impacts can be expected in settlements and where should new cities be built, and with what population-size in mind? What are the disaster-risk reduction interventions, coping-capacity and national resource implications, e.g. drought relief, that are required in areas that are set to experience significant and intolerable changes in climate: Should high-risk settlement development for instance be curbed, will government be able to provide support for the most vulnerable and if so, of what kind and at what cost? Furthermore, what kind of activities and settlement patterns should be allowed in such
areas, and should new settlement development in these areas be discouraged, or concentrated in alternative, carefully selected suitable locations? Questions around regional adaptation includes consideration whether directing or discouraging urban and settlement in certain regions is constitutional, and if so, what kind of method or measure to regulate settlement in such areas would be used?

The higher levels of discomfort in the interior of the western and north-western parts of the country may also trigger migration from these parts to areas with better climates, notably the (1) eastern interior and (2) eastern and southern coastal belts. The eastern coastal belt and eastern escarpment is, however, the part of the country (1) most suitable for food production and surface water-capture, and (2) in which traditional land tenure systems currently prevail. These are also areas in which the dreaded land-related legislation of the colonial and Apartheid eras have left deep scars, both on the people, and space, in the form of limited access to land, over-grazing and erosion. Given the urgency of the matter from a national perspective, and the challenges that will be encountered, it is of crucial importance that ‘a national spatial climate-mitigation plan’ be prepared, with (1) participation of all role-players involved, and (2) strong spatial planning, ecosystems and land-use management components.

In addition to this, climate change is also set to have severely negative impacts in terms of temperature increases and lower rainfall figures in countries to the north of South Africa, and up into central Africa. These changes could potentially lead to large-scale in-migration of ‘environmental refugees’ from such countries to amongst others, South Africa. Thus, South Africa will both (1) need to be prepared, and (2) our national space be planned with such eventualities in mind, to avoid the kind of antagonism and open hostility that refugees from Africa, the Middle East and Asia are increasingly experiencing in parts of Europe.
**Figure 12: Ecologies, Economies and Spaces – Climate Change and Projected Regional Implications**

For the period 2021-2050 relative to 1961-1990, under low mitigation, very hot days are projected to increase with as many as 40-60 days per year in the Limpopo river valley, and 70 days per year in parts of the Northern Cape, North-West, Orange River Valley.

CCAM projected change in the annual average number of very hot days (units are days per grid point per year) over South Africa at 8 km resolution, for the time-slab 2021-2050 relative to 1961-1990. The 10th, 50th and 90th percentiles are shown for the ensemble of downscalings of six GCM projections under RCP4.5 (left) and RCP8.5 (right) (CSIR, 2018a).
Figure 13: Ecologies, Economies and Spaces – National Ecological Infrastructure

PROTECTED AREAS
Areas with high competition between sensitive ecosystems and human development

STRATEGIC WATER SOURCE PRODUCTION AREAS

- 8% of Land Area
- 50% of national water supply
- Supports 51% of the population and 61% of the economy
Figure 14: Ecologies, Economies and Spaces – Ecological Infrastructure, Interdependence and Threats

WATER SECURITY: SPATIAL INTERDEPENDENCIES

Ecological Risks for Water Security if not restored

- **1 Greater uMgeni region** (KZN) (water supply for Ethekwini, intensive agriculture, expanding settlements.)
- **2 Waterberg region** (Limpopo) (mining, water and future expansion driven as national priority)
- **3 Breede and Berg River** (water supply for Cape Town, intensive agriculture, city growth, Increasing Droughts
- **4 Olifants WMA** (Mpumalanga & Limpopo) (big irrigation scheme, major water quality issues, mining pressure)

Reliance on Water

- **WATER SOURCES:** Strategic water areas - 8% of land, 50% of surface water supply
- **LAND USES IMPACTING ON WATER SOURCE:**
  - Industrial
  - Mining
  - Irrigated Land
  - Degraded Land
  - Residential

INTERDEPENDENCIES:
Cities and towns relying on water transfers, many from already stressed catchments, support 61% of economy and 51% of population.

Stressed Catchments
Water Scarce Regions
Figure 15: Ecologies, Economies and Spaces – Supporting Ecological Infrastructure

The development of these dense rural areas in a sensitive manner, including better land use management and addressing unresolved issues of land tenure, is a priority. Consideration will have to be given to the establishment of a more concentrated land use pattern, with more consolidated land being available for small scale and high-intensity commercial agriculture.

At the same time, the economic opportunities inherent in the productive capacity of the area, should not be negated.
Figure 16: Ecologies, Economies and Spaces – Regional Economic Trends

The mining dependent economies in the area of slow growth and absolute decline around the Gauteng City Region. Mining production in the area around the metro's declined from 7% of the national Mining output in 1996 to 3.86% in 2016. Unemployment increasing whilst region will continue to face population growth.

The Bigger Karoo Region, where temperature increases and water security create increasing risks for large number of vulnerable local economies.

Densely settled areas where employment vulnerability is very high and where population growth exceeds economic growth.

Large and growing urban regions with stagnant economies and low employment growth.
Figure 17: Ecologies, Economies and Space – National Economic Production and Employment Trends

SPATIAL REPRESENTATION OF ECONOMIC PRODUCTION IN SA (2016)
Nodal Agglomeration (Largely Retail and Trade, Finance, Government Services) and Manufacturing Related Sectors) and Rural Resource Economies (Agriculture, Mining, Energy production, Oceans)

NATIONAL ECONOMIC OUTPUT AND EMPLOYMENT TRENDS (INCREASINGLY NODAL)

IDENTIFIED COMPARATIVE ADVANTAGE FOR EXPORTS: FUTURE FOCUS AREAS (INCREASINGLY NODAL AND DISTRIBUTED)

NATIONAL SIGNIFICANCE OF SERVICE SECTOR (LARGELY NODAL)

Draft National Spatial Development Framework 2019
Figure 18: Ecologies, Economies and Spaces – People and Agglomeration Economies in Polycentric Network of Cities and Towns

PEOPLE AND SERVICE ECONOMY

Large towns, cities & metro’s are the productive heartland of the SA Formal Economy - Contributing to almost 72% of Formal National Economic Output (GVA) and 66% of all formal employment

**Figure 19: Ecologies, Economies and Spaces – Agricultural Resource Economy and Food Production**

Agriculture as Significant Contributor to National Economies & Sector Employment

- **20 Top Agriculture Production Areas:**
  - 36% of National Agricultural Output,
  - 30% Employment in Sector 2016

Agriculture as Significant Contributor to Local Economies and Employment

Agriculture Land Significance for National Food Security

Identified areas of high and moderate land capability, high potential for agri-resource enterprise development - Considering a) crop fields from the National Department of Agriculture as well as b) land capability updated by National Department of Agriculture.

*Data: StatsSA 2011, 2016 and Quantec 2016. Spatial indicators based on CSIR Mesozone 2017, See Annexure A.*
3.7 Land Reform

Irrespective of the final wording of the amendment to Section 25 of the Constitution specifying the conditions in terms of which the State may expropriate land without compensation, land reform will see a rapid expansion from its current form and its performance to date, both in urban and rural South Africa. In accordance with the intention to address colonial land and livelihood dispossession and injustice, Black South Africans will either get (1) secure tenure and land use rights, or (2) full title to land, and the grossly unbalanced land ownership profile, by which the bulk of commercial agricultural land in the country is held by White South Africans, will be radically reversed. As such, land reform is set to have a huge impact on (1) national land-use and land-ownership patterns, (2) national settlement development, and (3) the national space economy.

In urban areas, land reform is sure to involve the identification of ‘suitable land for making a life, and quality urban life and living’, i.e. land that could (1) ensure infill development, (2) bring about greater social and economic inclusion, (3) unleash new economic opportunities, and (4) enable a far greater segment of the South African population to own and lease property, and have access to the amenities and qualities of urban living. In addition to this, the provision of land for economic activities and property development in urban areas to Black South Africans previously excluded from such opportunities, will also assist in bringing far more new and emerging actors into the economy, and assist in breaking the back of the deeply monopolistic, concentrated and elite-controlled nature of the South African economy. At the same time, urban land reform may assist in making available sites for (1) unleashing new opportunities in under-valued economies in our urban areas, such as the optimisation of the cultural industries, entertainment, food preparation, and service and small-scale manufacturing and repair activities, and (2) facilitating the functional integration of urban South Africa into a functional national economic innovation, inclusion and transformation system. This will, however, require of municipalities to gather the necessary information and keep up-to-date records of all land parcels in their areas of jurisdiction that are (1) strategically located with regards to urban economies, (2) underutilised, (3) vacant, and/or (4) kept for speculative purposes only. It would also require decisive action and the limiting of time-lags between land acquisition, release, development and utilisation.

In rural areas, information such as (1) land ownership, (2) the condition of the land and soils, (3) the carrying capacity of the land, (4) the availability of water on the land, (5) accessibility, (6) the quality of fences and roads, and (7) anticipated exposure to climate change, would be important considerations. As in urban areas, limiting the time lag between land acquisition and utilisation will be of the essence. Care would also need to be taken to mediate the impacts of changes in rural economies, notably in small towns built up on the back of, and reliant on (1) large-scale commercial agriculture and large farmers, and (2) their related market, financial and personal services, daily supplies, education, health care and fertilizer needs. At the same time, engagement will need to take place on the matter of tenure in communal land-areas, and the utilisation and sharing of such land in the ‘ecological sweet spot’ of our country, i.e. the eastern coastal belt and eastern escarpment, for food production, surface water capture and provision of key ecosystem services.

3.8 Dependency on Natural Resource Extraction and Related Economic Activities

Currently, our national economy is heavily natural resource-extraction based, with mining and coal-based energy generation key contributors to our national GVA. The NDP supports a move away from coal-based energy generation in line with international trends and climate protocols. Long-term spatial and infrastructure planning must be cognisant of this
move, and a collectively and carefully planned, well-communicated and stakeholder-sensitive transition – including the social, spatial and economic mitigation of the sure-to-be-significant impacts of the move – be undertaken.

While currently still of enormous importance, mining is set to shrink in terms of its contribution to the national economy, and undergo a radical change in terms of employment levels in the light of automation and possible disruptions in the demand for certain commodities, such as coal and platinum. The move away from platinum is tied to (1) an increased search for and use of cheaper alternatives, (2) far more recycling of the metal, and (3) most importantly, the global move away from diesel cars, of which most use platinum in their catalytic converters. While (1) the use of palladium – another member of the Platinum Group Metals (PGMs) – in the catalytic converters of petrol cars (following on from the turn away from diesel) may offer some short-term respite, and (2) the use of platinum in the hydrogen fuel cell-industry may hold out some longer-term hope, there is a very real likelihood of the PGMs industry seeing serious shrinkage in the not too distant future. Should this happen, it would hit our economy very hard in at least three ways: (1) a much smaller demand for platinum, which could lead to en masse platinum mine closures and job losses; (2) a greatly reduced demand for diesel-powered vehicles, which could hurt our local car manufacturing industry (with its strong emphasis on diesel cars) severely; and (3) a greater demand for electric cars in which we have not invested as a country, coupled with a focus in new mining exploration-activities on metals required for electrical cars, which we are not world-leaders in.

Areas where the coal and platinum mining sectors form the backbone of the local economy, especially insofar as local employment is concerned, will have to be supported to transition towards more diversified, sustainable economies. In places where (1) climate change, and (2) the lack of, or limited number of opportunities mean that there are no viable economic alternatives to mining, resettlement to places with viable, sustainable economies will need to be (1) planned for with the full participation of all stakeholders, and (2) effected with the utmost degree of circumspection.

### 3.9 Technology, Innovation, Resilience and Disruptions in the Space Economy

While this is a fertile field for speculation, there is far less clarity as to what this shaper will entail and how it will play out in countries, cities and rural areas throughout the world. What is increasingly clear is that (1) communication will become faster, more affordable and more accessible to all; (2) urban areas, notably large urban areas, with their potential for human-to-human service-based economies, dense institutional networks and higher education, innovation and research centres and institutes, will remain, and become even more significant players in this/the new economy; (3) automation, robotics, and machine learning is upon us, and will cause major disruptions in the world of work and will leave very few occupations unaffected, with some areas of work, such as dangerous and physically draining work in the mining industry at least being a thing of the past; and (4) those who have higher levels of education are more likely to manage, utilise and gain from the transitions than those with only rudimentary levels.

With regards to national spatial development, South Africa should see (1) the roll-out of lightning-fast broadband access throughout the country within less than a decade, (2) the advent of highly automated mining activities with far fewer on-site jobs, which can be sustained by “fly-in-fly-out” modes of operation, and hence not require the establishment of ‘mining towns’ as in the past, (3) automation in economic sectors that are currently regarded as major creators of employment, such as manufacturing and agriculture, thus leading to a reduction in
employment and job creation in areas where it would be sorely needed, notably rural South Africa, and (4) closures of factories and mines in South Africa that are unable to compete globally, leading not only to job losses in towns dependent on those sectors, but also a general contraction in retail and economic activities in affected municipalities.

In order to ensure that the country is not left behind, the following are imperative: (1) the roll-out of broadband throughout the country, first to the most densely populated areas, and thereafter the more sparsely populated areas; (2) the prioritisation of well-functioning, key national road and rail networks to ensure the creation of a densely integrated functional national economic system; (3) a focus on innovation and knowledge generation, codification, packaging and sale; (4) the expansion, modernisation and re-gearing of the higher education sector towards growing and supporting innovation and the entertainment, cultural and creative industries; and (5) the nurturing of all South Africans, but especially our youth, by ensuring proper nutrition, a safe, secure and pollution-free environment, quality health care and meaningful, life-long learning, to ensure that they are, and remain fully prepared for the dynamic world they will be living in. In addition to that, if well-used, the new technologies, given their (1) ease of access, and (2) disruptive qualities, should be of assistance in breaking down the monopolistic nature of the South African economy.

For urban areas to play the role that they can and must, ‘public city space’ will have to be optimised in terms of its ability to attract and grow informal activities linked to information, communication and technology services. This will in itself ask (1) less of a focus in urban economic and spatial development plans on large-scale ‘nodal developments’ with flashy high-rental shopping malls and office blocks, and warehouses filled with imported goods, and (2) more on new technology-assisted and enabled, small-and-medium-sized eco-agro-industries, manufacturing and cultural activities, and innovation. Should South Africa not succeed in surviving the disruptions and transitions coming our way, it will most likely lead to (1) the creation of new inequalities, (2) further fragmentation, and (3) more and deeper gaps between the rich and the poor, followed by more crime and even more barricaded property developments.
Figure 20: Movement, Connections and Flows – Connectivity
Figure 21: Movements, Connections and Flows – Inter-regional Trade Connections

Urban regions act as international gateways for trade with the SADC region and world - 86.5% of total national formal economic activity in 2016

Gateways
- Trade, Logistics, Ports
- Government Services
- Knowledge Economies, Research

Attractors
- Urbanisation and activity
- International Tourism

Inter-regional Centres
- Administrative, Education
- Service Related Economies
- Green Economy, Mining, Manufacturing, Industrialisation

Improved Exports Require Strong African Integration Inter-regional Gateways and Enabling Trade Environment
- Total port costs in South Africa was 190% above the global average in 2014/15.
- The top 1% firms responsible for 80% of South Africa’s exports (international average of 55%).

Figure 22: Movements, Connections and Flows – Energy
Figure 23: Movements, Connections and Flows - ICT

Information Communication Technology (ICT) Connectivity regarded as critical building block of social and economic service connectivity.

Indication of national access and distance to Fiber Connection and Current Regional Progress

ICT Fibre connection distance
Distance (m)
- 1 - 5000 (Good)
- 5001 - 10000
- 10001 - 20000 (Average)
- 20001 - 50000
- 50001 - 300000 (Poor)

SADC Neighbouring countries
3.10 Globalisation, Supra-National Regionalisation, Gateway Nodes and National Connectivity and Integration

Despite the current setbacks for global trade, the long-term trend will be for (1) increased global trade, and (2) increasing integration of countries and cities in the global economy. The importance of being part of this global economy and to be ‘an equal partner’ in this system, will demand of countries, including South Africa, to ensure ease of access to their economies through well-functioning (1) global gateways, i.e. harbours, airports and border posts, and (2) a well-maintained national road and rail network. The latter will also ensure that the whole country, and not only parts of it become and remain part of this global economy. Prioritisation of routes on this network will be very important, as funds for road and rail connections will be severely limited. Where possible, rail should be prioritised, to (1) reduce carbon emissions and damage to roads by trucks, and (2) minimise the social costs that communities in towns with truck stops, especially their most vulnerable members, often suffer.

Significant changes are also envisaged in the top order of the global economy, with (1) China and India set to greatly strengthen their positions, and (2) regional powerhouses, such as Indonesia, Brazil, Turkey and Mexico poised to increasingly make their presence felt. Furthermore, a number of countries on the African continent are rising rapidly, notably Ethiopia, Rwanda, Ghana, Kenya, Nigeria, Egypt and Angola. Closer to home, Mozambique is growing at a steady pace, and Zimbabwe should be making rapid economic progress in the next few decades. Should South Africa wish to remain a part of this global economy, it will need to ensure that its urban and rural-based economies are globally competitive, which would amongst others, require (1) reducing constrains on small business development, and (2) the upskilling of our labour force. From a national spatial perspective, South Africa must ensure that it ties its economy into the (1) new global economies, (2) regional powerhouses, and (3) emerging economies on the African continent. This must be done though aligning its ports with the growing significance of new trade routes to the east of the country, and ensuring fast and reliable connectivity through these ports to not only the Gauteng urban region, but also other regions in our country with strong export opportunities.

Of equal importance will be the strengthening of regional trading blocs, such as the African Union (AU) and the Southern African Development Community (SADC), to (1) create greater regional consumer markets and (2) ensure more bargaining power when negotiating the terms of trade with other such blocs, e.g. the European Union. Alignment of national freight and logistics infrastructure, especially the (1) major road and rail corridors, but also (2) harbour infrastructure, will be required to establish and sustain strong regional linkages within SADC.

Internally, if a fast-growing, well-connected and more inclusive economy is to be achieved, the development of movement infrastructure and a variety of modes of transport will have to be guided by a national spatial development pattern with at its base (1) the pursuit of more compact, concentrated settlement in fewer core national nodes, to reduce the number of main roads and railway lines to be built and maintained, (2) more mixed, higher density development, to reduce the need for motorised travel and distances to be travelled, and (3) higher levels of beneficiation and processing of raw materials, to reduce the volume of raw products that pass through our harbours and require road and rail transport and expensive infrastructure networks.

The movement network will also have to be strengthened in the eastern escarpment and eastern and southern coastal areas, to support the
population, economic and climatic shifts described earlier in Section 3.6. In addition to this, infrastructure maintenance will have to be prioritised, not only for freight transport, but equally so for the safe, efficient and affordable movement of passengers, including tourists. In densely settled urban areas, a special emphasis will need to be placed on the provision of more affordable public transport services in Transit Oriented Development-configurations.

3.11 Institutional Weaknesses and Fragmentation and Prospects for National Developmental Action

In a country with the dreadful history of exploitation and targeted underdevelopment like South Africa’s, there are high expectations of the State to assist in (1) correcting the wrongs of the past, (2) healing the still-open wounds, and (3) creating a different and better future. This is, and has proven to be a huge endeavour, and one that government has managed to attend to with different degrees of success. What has not made this ‘national transformation, reconstruction and redevelopment task’ any easier is the ‘cutting-up and parcelling-out’ of inherently highly integrated national reconstruction, transformation and redevelopment tasks to different spheres of government in terms of the Constitution, with limited powers of one sphere over another to bring about (or force) the required nationally-focused and significant alignment, integration and coordination. In addition to this, the need to bring other spheres of government on board in planning processes, also has a cost-implication, requiring of officials to (1) meet and talk through such tasks, and (2) try to find ways to coordinate, align and harmonise their actions.

Given a wide range of reasons, notably (1) the costs involved, (2) the lack of enforcement of decisions reached in multi-stakeholder engagement sessions, (3) the different modalities and work and budget-cycles, and (4) the unique particularities of decision-making in the different spheres and sectors of government, national sector departments have increasingly focused on fulfilling their mandates and going it alone in their pursuit of meeting their set targets. In addition to this, inefficiency, incompetence, corruption and theft of state resources has (1) led to an erosion of trust in public institutions, (2) severely damaged the culture of service delivery in the public service, and (3) siphoned off billions of Rands required for redress and development. The result has been an increasingly frustrated populace that has lost much of its trust in the State and its capabilities. Another outcome of State failure has been an increasingly greater reliance on (1) the private sector and (2) outside countries and entities to finance much-needed infrastructure investment. While ‘it may get things done’, it may also lead to (1) the country losing control over its resources, and (2) an inability to implement plans and frameworks that are in the national interest, rather than those that are in the interests of the private investors or foreign countries.

In the provincial sphere, many provincial governments have prepared provincial economic growth and development plans and spatial development frameworks to address their economic, spatial development and human settlement challenges, but have in most cases lacked (1) the funds required to put these plans into motion, given that the bulk of their funds are tied to the provision of education, health and welfare services, and (2) struggled to secure national sector department and municipal buy-in to and support for these plans and frameworks.

In the local space, municipalities are increasingly struggling to provide basic municipal services, often overwhelmed by the huge national redevelopment and transformation tasks they have been given. And, while the crucial and potentially very powerful (1) spatial planning and transformation, and (2) land use management functions resort with them, most municipalities lack the leadership, technical capacity and finances to adequately execute their mandates. At the same time, many
municipalities have turned ever-more inward, both in terms of municipal planning and the provision of municipal services, which has been hugely detrimental to progressive, transformative municipal-wide planning, and subsequently also provincial and national planning and transformation. In addition to this, in distressed mining and heavy manufacturing areas, municipalities were not only hard-hit by job losses and business closures, but also lost their steady and significant incomes from the sale of water and electricity to mines and factories. In many rural areas, municipalities have struggled to prepare credible plans and achieve the desired developmental impact, given (1) the vast size of their areas of jurisdiction, (2) a lack of capacity, and (3) the enormity of their inherited service backlogs.

While the State is and remains crucial to the reconstruction, transformation and development of our country, it is currently struggling to do so. Inadequate funding and capacity, and a loss of trust and legitimacy in the eyes of the people, coupled with a deficit of political will, are key constraints on this crucial endeavour. Failure to deliver on much smaller tasks has also reduced confidence in the ability of the State to attend to the large national transformation questions. As such, rebuilding trust and showing progress in the areas of transformation will be crucial in the next decade. Making good on planned interventions and ensuring feasibility of investments in terms of a long-term plan will also assist in this regard. To do so within the limited budgets available will require (1) far more spatial targeting, integration and alignment in infrastructure investment and development spending by the State, and (2) ensuring that existing and possible systemic links between places and communities are optimised. Careful planning of the placing, type and reach of State facilities will go a long way in assisting such processes. Equally so will be careful planning of the national spatial development pattern, to concentrate resources and investment in areas where the majority of our people are living and are likely to live in future. Such national, regional and local-scale planning will, however, require (1) staffing of government departments and municipalities with well-trained, ethically-solid professionals; (2) far more direction and clarity in terms of what is to be done, where, when, for how long, and by whom; and (3) the introduction of the necessary systems to drive and assess compliance and ensure accountability.
Figure 24: Institutions and Services – Basic Service Delivery

NATIONAL SCALE OVERVIEW OF PROGRESS AND CHALLENGES WITH BASIC SERVICE DELIVERY

1996

2011

Legend

Province

Service Delivery 1996

Service Delivery % per mesozone

0 - 10%

11 - 20%

21 - 40%

41 - 60%

61 - 80%

81 - 100%

Legend

Province

Service Delivery 2011

Service Delivery % per mesozone

0 - 10%

11 - 20%

21 - 40%

41 - 60%

61 - 80%

81 - 100%

Legend

National Parks

Protected Areas

Major Roads

Municipalities

Service Delivery Stress %

1.6 - 15%

15.1 - 35%

35.1 - 45%

45.1 - 60%

60.1 - 80%

80.1 - 100%


Service delivery maintenance stress, where more than 50% of households experience prolonged water and electricity outages (2016)

Figure 25: Municipal Financial Viability

A LARGE NUMBER OF MUNICIPALITIES ARE FACING CHALLENGES IN TERMS OF FINANCIAL VIABILITY

Comparison of municipal budget per household for Municipalities where over 50 000 people live in densities greater than 500 persons/km²

Legend
- National Parks
- Railways
- Major Roads
- Municipalities
  - Financial Distress Score
    - 8 - 12
    - 12.1 - 14
    - 14.1 - 18
    - 18.1 - 19
    - 19.1 - 24

Highly distressed and limited capacity and resources to achieve developmental impact

Large numbers of financially distressed municipalities has significant implications for local service delivery. It also has significant implications for national developmental impact within an intergovernmental system where developmental local governments are required to fulfill key roles as part of a bigger developmental state.

Figure 26: Institutions and Services – Municipal Capability

AN INDICATION OF CURRENT GOVERNANCE SUPPORT FOCUS AREAS

Legend
- National Parks
- Major Roads
- IUDF 39 ICMs

Selected Municipal Support Focus Areas
- National Treasury
- Cooperative Governance
- Section 139
- CoGTA
- MISA
- VBS1
- Joint CoGTA/NT

Municipalities
Identified for support
- Identified and support planned
- Identified for support
- Others

A large number of municipalities are facing challenges in terms of governance capacity (including capacity, leadership, financial management and viability).

A range of inter-governmental support mechanisms have been set in place.

National Treasury, Municipal Support Focus Areas per Local Municipality, 2016-2017.
Figure 27: Institutions and Services – Municipal Capability

LOCAL GOVERNMENT (AND THE MAJOR CITIES IN PARTICULAR) ARE CRUCIAL ACTORS IN THE COUNTRY’S DEVELOPMENT AND IN BUILDING A CAPABLE STATE IN LINE WITH THE NATIONAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN (NDP)

Municipal Capability for 2017 (Capable Cities Index)

- The capacity of municipalities has significantly improved;
- 45 municipalities did not have a permanent municipal manager and CFO;
- Intervention under section 139 of the constitution can improve municipal capacity;
- 30% of municipalities would still require external assistance to reach full capacity;
- Cities are now performing better in filling vacant positions of senior managers; and
- Being a metropolitan municipality does not necessarily mean improved capacity.

Components of Municipal Capability

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment capability</th>
<th>The social and demographic composition of citizenry; economic circumstances (including the tax base); spatial structure of settlements; and ecological, geographic, natural, mineral, and environmental context in which individual municipalities function.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Institutional capability</td>
<td>The structure and functionality of the organisations with which the municipality needs to interact. This includes policy, legislation, the institutional framework, and the relationships between organisations, including the regulatory, enabling, and support arrangements for local government. It also includes the financial framework within which municipalities function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organisational capability</td>
<td>Internal policies, organisational structure, ability to manage relationships and contacts with other organisations, strategic leadership, organisational purpose, organisational memory, internal confidence, human resource management, operational systems, technical capacity (ability to provide and manage infrastructure) and financial abilities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Individual capability</td>
<td>The potential and competency that is found within a person. It is normally reflected through their technical and generic skills, knowledge and attitudes accumulated through education, training, experience, and networks</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Capable Cities Index (CCI) (Applied Constitutional Studies Laboratory at UWC (2017)), measures and ranks the capability of South Africa’s municipalities on the basis of their consistency in maintaining high levels of capacity, performance and compliance, with a focus on the 27 largest cities.

Parnel, S., Moodley, N., and Palmer, I., 2017. Defining the four components of capability
Figure 28: Institutions and Services – Social Services

The Service Economy (Government services) closely follow the dense rural settlement pattern, with a high concentration of such services in the eastern areas.

Range of cities and towns provide services within location and surrounding hinterland, with higher order services having a quite significant reach in sparsely populated areas.

PEOPLE AND SERVICE ECONOMY

Social Service Demand and Opportunities
Associated with Access and Social Facility Requirements for projected 2050 Population (CSIR Green Book, 2018) at existing service standards

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Selected Social Facility Requirements (Number of additional new facilities required)</th>
<th>Additional Units (after 2016 until 2050)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>District Hospital L1</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community Health Centre</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary Health Clinic</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branch Library</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home Affairs [medium sized]</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid Waste Disposal and Recycling Depots</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community Halls [if large]</td>
<td>317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social Grant Pay Points</td>
<td>900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABET/Skill Training Facilities</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary Schools [if large]</td>
<td>1,523</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary School with Grade R [if large]</td>
<td>2,721</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Early Childhood Development Centres</td>
<td>6,348</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECD Resource Hub</td>
<td>952</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regional Sport</td>
<td>70-100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Draft National Spatial Development Framework 2019 79
3.12 Key National Spatial Development Dynamics, Challenges and Opportunities

The key national spatial development challenges and opportunities (1) that emerged from the discussion of the ten National Spatial Development Shapers and (2) that the NSDF will have to respond to are:

- Providing life chances and a decent quality of life to an additional 17 to 22 million people between now and 2050, within the context of (1) an ever-smaller habitable land area due to climate change, (2) ever-more stressed, threatened and compromised ecological spaces and systems, and (3) ever-fewer natural resources;
- Ensuring rapid redress at scale to Black South Africans (1) dispossessed of their land, (2) systematically excluded from the economy, and (3) severely restricted and stunted in their life chances, while at the same time rapidly growing and transforming the economy and transforming national, provincial and local space;
- Maintaining national biodiversity and ecosystem integrity for global, national and local resilience within an environment of a young, dynamic and aspirational population;
- Managing competition between human activity and nationally important ecosystems and the essential services they provide, notably so with regards to water production, energy generation, mining, manufacturing and food production in the central and eastern parts of the country;
- Managing surface and groundwater use and potentially harmful land-uses in surface-water production areas, preventing contamination of water bodies and sources by human activities, rehabilitating contaminated water bodies, streams and rivers and maintaining bulk and local reticulation water infrastructure;
- Making the shift to a greener, low-carbon, more service-based economy through (1) compact, mixed land-use well-connected urban and rural settlement development, (2) the provision of enabling municipal services, and (3) efficient and affordable ICT and transport infrastructure investment and development;
- Optimising the enormous economic growth and job creation opportunities that dense, compact and diverse urban agglomerations and development corridors offer in the areas of human-to-human service provision, trade, entertainment, and the creative industries, especially so in an ICT-rich, but also job-threatening 4th Industrial Revolution environment;
- Improving the quality of life and human capability in a fiscally-constrained environment through (1) the well-located, planned and integrated provision of social services, and (2) the optimisation of the economic and employment benefits of such service provision in all our cities, towns and villages;
- Transforming the current highly financialised commercial farming agricultural sector into a mixed system, including hundreds of thousands of small and medium-sized producers, and optimising the economic dividends from the research, marketing, financing and equipment development opportunities that this transition will create in both urban and rural South Africa;
- Competing in the global economy through innovative product and service development in especially our large cosmopolitan urban regions, with an emphasis on (1) the creative industries, and (2) the cultural and entertainment sectors, and utilising both of these to bolster our tourism offering;
- Optimising the enormous economic opportunities that SADC offers for (1) trade, (2) collaborative research and knowledge development, packaging and distribution, (3) water-sharing, and (4) energy generation;
 Identifying and utilising opportunities for the beneficiation of minerals, metals and agricultural products where it is economically viable and ecologically sustainable; and

Optimising our existing national transport infrastructure network by (1) prioritising rail over road, and (2) investing in and maintaining the most crucial components of the network, with an emphasis on connecting global gateways, core urban nodes and regional development anchors throughout the country.
PART FOUR: National Spatial Development Vision, Logic, Levers and Outcomes
4.1 Introduction

In this part of the NSDF a number of the core components of the National Transformation Logic (see Section 1.2) are covered. In the first section, the National Spatial Development Vision to direct, guide and align spatial planning, infrastructure investment and development is provided. This is followed by an exposition of the shifts that need to be made from the current National Spatial Development Logic to the required Post-Apartheid National Spatial Development Logic in accordance with the National Transformation Logic (see Section 1.2). Following this exposition is an introduction to, and overview of a series of ‘National Spatial Development Levers’ to bring about the Post-Apartheid National Spatial Development Pattern in accordance with the Post-Apartheid National Spatial Development Vision and Logic. This is followed by a section outlining a series of five National Spatial Development Outcomes that must and will be accomplished by (1) making the shifts in accordance with the Post-Apartheid National Spatial Development Logic, and (2) putting the National Spatial Development Levers to their envisaged use. These outcomes connect the National Spatial Development Vision and Logic, as set out in this part of the NSDF (i.e. Part Four) to the desired National Spatial Development Pattern in Part Five. Following this section is a vision of what life could be like in South Africa in 2050 should we jointly (1) work towards the vision, (2) make the necessary shifts in our spatial development logic, (3) use the levers as envisaged, and (4) pursue the outcomes, as set out in this part of the NSDF.

4.2 The National Spatial Development Vision

The purpose of the Post-Apartheid National Spatial Development Vision is to provide a long-term guiding light for realising our desired Post-Apartheid National Spatial Development Pattern. As set out in the National Transformation Logic (see Section 1.2) and the NSDF’s Theory of Change (see Section 1.4.3), this vision is:

- Derived and drawn from the National Development Paradigm, with as its key pillars the Constitution, the NDP, and the full suite of post-1994 legislation and policy; and
- Prepared within the current and anticipated future challenges and associated opportunities facing our country (see Part 3 and specifically Section 3.13).

In addition to the more eternal long-term National Spatial Development Vision and accompanying Mission-statement (see Figure 29 below), a time-bound 2050-National Spatial Development Vision is provided in Section 4.5. This vision serves to make (1) the future more tangible, and (2) our infrastructure investment and development spending actions more measurable in terms of moving our country from where it is now to where we want it to be.

4.3 The National Spatial Development Logic

A key driver in the NSDF’s theory of change (see Section 1.4.3) is the move from a National Spatial Development Logic based on, and in service of the colonial and Apartheid National Development Paradigms, to one based on and in service of a Post-Apartheid National Development Paradigm. In this regard, it is framed and guided by:

- The NDP targets, strategic levers and strategic policy direction; and
- The five normative principles, as provided in SPLUMA.

In this section of the framework, (1) the direction and guidance provided by the NDP and the five SPLUMA principles, and (2) the shifts that have to be made in the National Spatial Development Logic are set out.
The National Spatial Development Vision Statement

“All Our People Living in Shared and Transformed Places in an Integrated, Inclusive, Sustainable and Competitive National Space Economy”

The accompanying Mission Statement reads as follows:

“Making our Common Desired Spatial Future Together Through Better Planning, Investment, Delivery and Monitoring”

4.3.1 The NDP as Guide and Driver

The NDP identifies a set of national development priorities, which include targets for economic growth and employment, equality and prosperity. It also identifies (1) inclusive growth, (2) the capacity of our people, and (3) a capable state, as the levers to achieve these targets. The link between the targets, levers and strategic policy direction, as provided in the NDP, is summarised in Figure 30.

Figure 30: The NDP Levers and Objectives-Framework
The national spatial development implications of the strategic direction provided by the NDP in the formulation of a new National Spatial Development Logic can be interpreted as follows:

(a) With regards to Inclusive Growth

A need to:

- Transit to a compact, service-based, resource-efficient space economy, that includes both rural and urban spaces, and that recognises the limitations of our national natural resource base;
- Consider the long-term resilience-benefits of a more compact settlement footprint in spaces less prone to the impacts of climate change, and adjust (1) settlement development forms and patterns, (2) housing types, building materials and construction methods, and (3) transport and service networks accordingly;
- Increase access and remove barriers to (1) the often concentrated and barricaded benefits of the national resource base, and (2) the locational benefits and amenities of exquisite and exclusive places developed for the few;
- Promote inclusive and sustainable urban settlement growth and facilitate movement and trade in and between settlements;
- Support growing economic nodes in previously forgotten and ignored regions, and ensure a more diversified economy;
- Deal with declining mining and industrial areas in compassionate, smart, affordable and sustainable ways; and
- Recognise and develop settlements in accordance with their (1) roles in the national space economy and network of settlements, (2) regional and local contexts/settings, and (3) labour-absorption capacities.

(b) With regards to the Capacity of our People

A need to:

- Ensure access to, and provision of quality services to all South Africans, to enable the development of human capital irrespective of where it is located in the country;
- Develop national urban centres of service excellence and innovation, to drive and maintain the global competitiveness of our country; and
- Develop differentiated, place-specific and viable responses to critical issues, such as service gaps, migration hot-spots, high levels of youth unemployment and exclusion, and land availability and tenure-related issues.

(c) With regards to a Capable State

A need to:

- Recognise and use (1) spatial planning as a tool for transformation, and (2) spatial planning processes and plans, such as SDFs, as opportunities for integrating and coordinating State action;
- Introduce a new spatial development logic and vision in the process of building a new, cohesive society; and
- Attend to state capacity gaps, to ensure fulfilment of the NDP’s developmental agenda.

4.3.2 The SPLUMA Principles as Guide and Driver

In addition to the policy directives provided by the NDP, SPLUMA provides five guiding principles that have to be used and observed in all spatial
planning processes at all scales, including the national scale. These principles are the following:

- Spatial justice;
- Spatial sustainability;
- Spatial resilience;
- Spatial efficiency; and
- Good administration.

In terms of the formulation of a new National Spatial Development Logic, the following guidance and direction is drawn from these principles:

(a) Spatial Justice

A need to:

- Ensure redress in terms of access to the economic opportunities and locational benefits that the country and its cities, towns and rural areas offer, including well-located, productive land;
- Include inclusion of previously excluded areas in the national space economy; and
- Pursue intergenerational justice in (1) the location and pattern of settlement development, and (2) the use of natural resources.

(b) Spatial Sustainability

A need to:

- Ensure national spatial development within the limits of the natural resource base of the country – now and in the future;
- Pursue the development of viable settlements and sustainable economies; and
- Pursue a more concentrated, well-connected and more compact national footprint, to increase access to opportunities for all, and reduce (1) use and wastage of natural resources and State finances, and (2) the need for motorised transport.

(c) Spatial Resilience

A need to:

- Proactively minimise risks to settlements though the considered selection of the location and pattern of settlement development; and
- Develop settlements in ways that reduce their dependency on carbon-based fuels and grid-based energy-distribution systems, as and where possible, to mitigate and reduce their climatic impact.

(d) Efficiency

A need to:

- Optimise the use of all State and non-State resources, and minimise the negative impacts of settlement development, wherever it is done and whatever spatial form it takes; and
- Diversify and densify settlements to reduce transactional costs and the need for motorised transport.

(e) Good Administration

A need to:

- Pursue coordination, integration and spatial alignment in all forms of government spatial planning, budgeting and investment;
- Ensure maximum participation and active engagement in spatial planning and settlement building, grow the local economy and tax base, and build social cohesion; and
• Ensure adherence to the law, notably SDFs and municipal Land Use Schemes (LUSs), to ensure that the social, spatial and economic benefits of good spatial planning materialise.

4.3.3 The Necessary ‘Shifts’

Based on the NDP and SPLUMA as guides and drivers, the following interrelated shifts in the National Spatial Development Logic are proposed by the NSDF to ensure the movement to a truly Post-Apartheid National Spatial Development Pattern:

(a) With regards to the beneficiaries of national spatial planning and spatial development
• Placing the interests and benefit of the many at centre stage, and not those of a/the few;
• Ensuring access for all to the use of land for residential, social, economic and cultural purposes, both in urban and rural areas;
• Limiting the development of luxury enclaves and estates for the use and enjoyment of the few; and
• Ensuring rapid release of land through well-planned urban and rural land reform at scale, for the use, development and enjoyment by the many.

(b) With regards to our natural resource base
• Placing a much greater focus on, creating a much greater awareness of, and introducing a far greater quantification of our natural resource base, to enable and enhance the sustainable use and protection of critical natural resources;
• Making a clearer distinction between the ecological and economic value of natural resources and pursuing a far greater interest in and understanding of future trends and risks in natural resource use;
• Identifying and earmarking broad categories of (1) high-value agricultural land for national food security and agrarian reform, and (2) environmentally-significant areas for the provision and use of essential ecosystem services.

(c) With regards to the nature, function and performance of our settlements
• Recognising our settlements as ‘our new gold’, and establishing a new, renewable people and place-based economy based on human interaction and ingenuity in quality urban spaces, and no longer a finite, ecologically-unfriendly mineral and metals resource-extraction driven economic model;

• Reframing the old logic of cities as ‘engines of growth’ in service of capital, to ‘cities as engines of radical transformation in service of inclusive, people-focused, people-driven development and transformation’, and unleashing the enormous opportunities they offer for (1) the human-to-human services sector, (2) the innovation, knowledge-creation, valorisation and sharing sector, (3) the culture, entertainment and restaurant sector, and (4) the domestic and international tourism sector;

• Optimising the dividend of the millions of young South Africans that will be entering higher education, and be (1) gaining new insights, (2) ‘making new sense’ of the world, and (3) developing new forms of knowledge;

• Recognising cities as democratic spaces in which millions of economic activities and transactions take place and can take place, and in doing so, have the power to disrupt and destroy the highly concentrated, monopolistic nature of our economy;

• Emphasising the need to develop a new kind of city in which public space can become a key driver of a new ‘people’s economy from below’;

• Pursuing a denser, smaller, polycentric system of settlements that has (1) a smaller footprint, and (2) spans urban and rural areas;

• Making a clear distinction between the roles and capacity of different types of settlement on the national settlement network;

• Recognising the need for the future-proofing of cities as sites of human innovation in becoming active participants in, and not victims of the era of Artificial Intelligence (AI) and the 4th Industrial Revolution.

(d) With regards to our rural areas

• Recognising the need to develop and strengthen regional-rural systems in the pursuit of vibrant, inclusive and sustainable rural development;

• Pursuing the identification, development and strengthening of ‘regional development anchors’ in rural areas, to (1) connect urban to rural areas in mutually-beneficial ways, and (2) act as catalysts for regional-rural development;

• Developing a systems-based ‘polycentric rural service-delivery network’ around regional developments anchors and carefully selected ‘rural service towns’, to provide quality public services, and ensure far greater levels of rural-to-rural interaction and local economic development;

• Exploring the delineation of ‘rural edges’ in rural areas to ensure the protection of (1) the unique, intrinsic qualities of our rural areas, (2) the cultural, customary and historical value they have, and (3) the often highly sensitive ecosystems they harbour;

• Pursuing intra-rural trade as core systemic and social glue/cohesion-activity between villages and towns in rural areas, and not shopping malls, which at core are little more than ‘one-sided-extraction transaction points’; and

• Pursuing greater resilience of rural areas through diversification, in so doing ensuring that they are not and do not become ‘single-economic sector’ places.
4.4 National Spatial Development Levers

In order to (1) give spatial expression to the National Spatial Development Vision, and (2) support the shifts that need to be made in accordance with the new National Spatial Development Logic, a series of ‘National Spatial Development Levers’ were developed. These levers have their home in:

- The contextual realities, challenges and opportunities, as set out in Part Three;
- The drivers, levers and principles as set out in the NDP, the IUDF and SPLUMA (see Sections 1.3.2 and 4.3);
- What is considered ‘good spatial and settlement planning’ in local and international planning policy frameworks, guidelines and practice; and
- The theoretical domains of spatial development planning, urban design, regional and rural development planning, institutional economics, agglomeration economics, and ecological resource planning and management.

Six such National Spatial Development Levers were developed. Each of these is discussed below (see Figures 31 and 32).

(e) With regards to the nature, significance, form and impact of spatial development planning

- Ensuring greater coordination, integration and collaboration in spatial development planning, both in and between the spheres and sectors of government, including the use of (1) national spatial targeting and (2) differentiated responses to the potentials and challenges of designated sub-national intervention areas;
- Investing at scale in areas identified for future economic growth, for the necessary period of time to make an impact, and with the benefit of not only the national economy, but also the regional and local economies in mind;
- Placing a far greater focus on the developmental impact of national investment and spending initiatives on (1) sub-national regions and (2) the livelihoods and well-being of communities in such regions;
- Introducing a ‘spatial transformation accountability system’ to set spatially-focused targets, and drive and measure progress with regards to (1) targeted investment in national priority spaces, (2) spatial transformation, and (3) the wise utilisation of our natural resource base; and
- Driving far greater involvement in, and support by sector departments and provinces in municipal spatial development planning, to ensure (1) the preparation and use of progressive, quality municipal SDFs, and (2) the enforcement of land-use policies and rules emanating from such SDFs in municipal Land Use Management Systems (LUMSs), as provided for in SPLUMA.
Figure 31: National Spatial Development Levers
Figure 32: Linking National Spatial Development Levers to the NDP and SPLUMA

NATIONAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT LEVERS

NDP LEVER: INCLUSIVE GROWTH
- Employment growth & faster income growth
- Employment diversification towards service sector
- Decrease resource dependence & reliance on raw material exports
- Transition to low carbon economy
- Inclusive rural economies - agriculture, processing, tourism, mining
- Supportive infrastructure - water, energy, movement, ICT

NDP LEVER: CAPACITY OF PEOPLE
- Education & skills development
- Health, access to services & food security
- Social protection for the cycle risks
- Settlements, normative principles of spatial justice, sustainability, resilience, quality and efficiency

NDP FRAMING CONDITIONS: SUSTAINABLE RESOURCE BASE
- Bio-ecological considerations:
  1. Protection & conservation
- Bio-economic considerations:
  1. Ecosystem services - water, energy, productive land
  2. Direct sector support - agriculture, fisheries, forestry, tourism, mining

SPLUMA PRINCIPLES
- Spatial Justice
- Spatial Sustainability
- Spatial Resilience
- Spatial Efficiency

Please note: NDP Lever ‘Capable State’ and SPLUMA Principle ‘Good Administration’ addressed in Implementation Framework
4.4.1 Urban Areas and Regions as Engines of National Transformation, Innovation and Inclusive Economic Growth

The IUDF argues that, “... in the economic history of humanity, urbanisation has always been an accelerator of growth and development, bringing about enormous changes in the spatial distribution of people and resources, and in the use and consumption of land”. With nearly 70% of South African’s population already living in cities and towns, and this figure set to rise to 80% by 2050, the NSDF shares this view, and argues that urban areas will play an increasingly important role in the development of a shared and sustainable South Africa. Urban areas will replace commodities as South Africa’s ‘new gold’. The NSDF does, however, hold that urban areas will only be able to perform this critical and desired role if:

- There are high levels of inter-connectivity between the country’s city regions, cities and towns, and they are all tightly integrated into a mutually beneficial and resilient national urban settlement network (see also Section 4.4.6 below);
- The benefits of agglomeration in urban areas are allowed to surface and flourish through (1) fast-tracked urban land reform and land release, (2) effective settlement planning, design and management, including growth management, (3) the introduction of regulations and land use management systems that focus on strategic and not petty matters, (4) densification, diversification and quality public place-making, (5) the provision of basic municipal and social services in a financially viable way, (6) the provision and use of effective public transport and non-motorised bicycle lanes and walkways, (7) stringent water demand and waste management, (8) the creation of safer environments, and (9) the provision of effective policing services; and
- Regional-level urban development corridors between (1) cities and towns in urban regions, as well as (2) existing and emerging nodes within cities and towns (such as between township nodes, suburban nodes and Central Business Districts) are planned, developed, supported and strengthened.

4.4.2 National Spatial Development Corridors as Incubators and Drivers of New Economies and Quality Human Settlements

National Spatial Development Corridors are large stretches of densely-populated human settlements and intense economic activity along/on roads and/or railway lines. The dense human settlements, the road/railway links and the intensive economic activities mutually support each other in a synergistic way. While such corridors often develop organically over long periods of time, they can be supported and strengthened, and their development fast-tracked through well-considered and targeted State interventions. Interventions of this nature typically entail (1) the strengthening of the economy or the housing market in cities and towns in the corridor, (2) the construction of new, or the expansion and/or upgrading of existing road
and railway links in the corridor and/or (3) the provision of targeted incentives to support denser, more concentrated development in corridors with more sprawling settlement patterns.

The NSDF regards **National Spatial Development Corridors** as potentially powerful national spatial development levers, especially (1) along coastal-based tourist routes, and (2) in former Bantustan areas marked by dense, yet sprawling human settlements along roads and/or railway lines.

The development of such mega-scale **National Spatial Development Corridors** will, however, require:

- Intensive and sustained broad-based, multi-sectoral intergovernmental and SOE-collaboration, especially so with regards to the quantum, timing and spatial location of (1) land to be released for use/settlement, (2) infrastructure investment, upgrading and maintenance, (3) and social service provision;
- The development of urban areas in the corridor in accordance with the **requirements for urban areas** as set out in Section 4.4.1 above; and
- The availability of viable, real economic opportunities, which would ideally not be based on a single economic sector, to (1) enhance resilience, and (2) increase the prospect of developing robust and diverse economies based on these opportunities.

### 4.4.3 Productive Rural Regions as Drivers of National Rural Transitions and Cornerstones of our National Resource Foundation

Rural areas, especially in the former Bantustans, (1) were zones of extreme neglect, and at the receiving end of the worst excesses of large-scale commercial farming, mining activities and urban-based manufacturing economies during colonial and Apartheid times, and (2) have of late been the sites of often well-intended, but piece-meal, unintegrated and fragmented spatial and economic development initiatives.

The NSDF puts forward a **Regional-Rural Development Model** (see Figure 33) as a third **National Spatial Development Lever**. This model:

- Takes a systemic view of rural areas, and proposes the ‘soft delineation’ of ‘polycentric functional rural regions’ that have (1) at least one well-connected regional development anchor, both within the region on the national transport network to ‘anchor’ the region in the national space economy, (2) social, cultural, historical, economic and cultural characteristics and attributes that would make the development of a ‘functional rural region’ possible over time, and (3) the potential for *intra-regional trade* between towns and villages in the region;
- Proposes the preparation of **regional-rural development plans**, as the DRDLR has already begun to do in rural South Africa, for these regions, and include the projects and plans that are...
identified in these plans in the IDPs and SDFs of the municipalities in whose areas of jurisdiction the regions fall;

- Requires that land reform be fast-tracked and undertaken within the framework of the regional-rural development plan, to ensure that suitable and well-located (1) agricultural land, and (2) stands in towns, are sought and released for productive purposes, and that the necessary support for beneficiaries (inputs, fencing, equipment, markets, finances, etc.) is properly planned for and undertaken in a systematic, structured and effective way;

- Requires wise natural resource use, management and protection;

- Utilises the Social Service Provisioning Model (see Section 4.4.4 and Figure 34) to (1) provide social services in villages, towns and regional development anchors in accordance with their role and place in the rural region, in the most effective, sustainable and affordable way, and (2) create at least one regional development anchor/town to attract and retain professionals and entrepreneurs who would otherwise generally not move to, or stay in rural areas;

- Envisages the use of ‘rural edges’ (see Glossary of Terms) to protect the rural regions from intrusion of non-compatible and destructive land uses that could (1) disrupt or violate the rural integrity of the region, (2) compromise ecosystems on which the region relies, and (3) threaten local lifestyles and cultures in the region; and

- Depends on local people being duly empowered to become active participants in the development of their areas, and hence makes a move away in rural development thinking and practice from an approach of ‘transformation-from-above’ to one of ‘transformation-from-below’vii.

Figure 33: Schematic Presentation of a Regional-Rural Development Model
4.4.4 A National Spatial Social Service Provisioning Model to Ensure Effective, Affordable and Equitable Social Service Delivery

The realities of (1) national fiscal constraints, (2) the high construction, maintenance and staffing costs of social services, and the (3) general inward focus in requests and proposals in municipal IDPs and SDFs for the placing of national and provincial social service facilities, require that a rational allocation of facilities rendering social services be done in national space. In addition to this, investment in social infrastructure, if (1) planned well, (2) designed for multiple uses, and (3) placed in ‘the right location/spot’, e.g. on public transport routes, and in a place where adequate municipal services are available, in a village, town or city, can become:

- An attractor for economic activities and contribute to place-making, urban densification and diversification; and
- A catalyst for nodal development, and assist in reducing transport costs and limiting urban and rural sprawl.

The provision of social services is also a creator of public sector jobs with secure incomes, which can assist in bringing a degree of predictability to the frequency and size of disposable income in a region or town. In rural areas, where settlement development was often not planned, the preparation of a proper ‘rural design framework/plan’ and the placing of government services in accordance with this framework/plan, could greatly assist in developing rural towns/settlements with solid, resilient public investment/capital structures.

The National Spatial Social Service Provisioning Model (see Figure 33) put forward in the NSDF as a National Spatial Development Lever, works on a hierarchical base, with the highest order services with the largest spatial reach in each category (see Figure 34), being placed in the highest order places in national urban cores and regional development anchors, and mobile clinics in small villages. Likewise, universities would be located in ‘national urban cores’, high schools in ‘rural service centres’, and small schools and mobile libraries in villages.

While rather rigid in appearance, the model does not propose an iron-caged spatial investment model, but instead envisages a situation by which municipalities and national and provincial sector departments would use the ‘national and regional settlement and service network’ or ‘social service wheel’ for short, as strong indicator and guide in jointly engaging and deciding on the spatial allocation of facilities across space. In addition to this, the wheel could also be used to:

- Avoid and resolve intergovernmental disputes regarding the spatial location of social service facilities;
- Inform, structure and guide engagements by communities with government regarding the provisioning and spatial location of social services; and
- Engage and ‘interrogate’ spatial investment decisions by national and provincial sector departments and municipalities regarding social services in accordance with the NSDF’s envisaged ‘national spatial accountability model’ (see Parts 5 and 6 of the NSDF).
Figure 34: A National Spatial Social Service Provisioning Model ("Social Service Wheel")

Figure 35: Illustration of Town Service Reach
4.4.5 A National Ecological Infrastructure System to Ensure a Shared, Resilient and Sustainable National Natural Resource Foundation

It is both a (1) national spatial development and (2) human rights imperative to ensure sustainable and just access to natural resources for current and future generations. The National Spatial Development Vision recognises this, and specifically refers to the need for our country’s natural resources to be shared and used by all in a sustainable manner. In order to give spatial expression to this imperative, the NSDF puts forward the introduction of a National Spatial Ecological Infrastructure System as a national spatial development lever in recognition of:

- The limited availability of high-value agricultural land, and seeks to ensure that this resource is identified and managed with the utmost of care to ensure national food security;
- The high levels of regional interdependency between water catchment areas and the enormous volumes of water transfers in the country, and hence the need to protect (1) surface water production catchment areas from encroachment by non-compatible land-uses, as well as (2) underground water sources from contamination by noxious economic activities; and
- The major changes in land suitability and habitability that extreme climate change is set to bring to our country, and hence the need to identify those areas that will most likely be least affected by climate change, and ringfencing, preserving and protecting these areas for (1) future (emergency) use for water and food production, and (2) the provision of crucial national ecological ecosystem services.

The National Spatial Development Lever put forward in the NSDF in this regard seeks to (1) identify those areas of crucial national ecological significance, and (2) propose measures to ensure their protection and management, and their reservation as such, in all provincial, regional and municipal SDFs to be prepared from hence forth.

4.4.6 A National Transport, Communications and Energy Infrastructure Network to Ensure a Shared, Inclusive and Sustainable Economy

A well-functioning and well-managed national transport and connectivity infrastructure network that ensures and enables (1) the safe and efficient movement of people, (2) the flow of information and communication, (3) the movement of goods and flow of services, (4) global connectivity and interaction in the global economy, is crucial to the spatial development and economic life of any country. Given (1) the high costs associated with the construction, upgrading and maintenance of such networks, which include airports, harbours, border posts, logistic hubs, electricity, fiber networks, broadband, natural gas pipelines, and road and rail networks, and (2) the need to recover such costs through use, a country has to carefully plan where these networks are to be built/installed. In the case of South Africa, the legacy of historic national development paradigms in terms of which such networks supported first colonial extraction and export, and later the creation of the Apartheid State for a White minority, requires that these networks be
strategically planned, built and maintained in support of post-Apartheid spatial transformation and inclusive economic growth.

The National Spatial Development Lever put forward in the NSDF with regards to transport and communications infrastructure networks, seeks to ensure:

- Investment in maintaining, strengthening and expanding connectivity, to ensure the creation of a solid transport and communications network between urban areas, regional development anchors and smaller towns and villages in such regions, with a focus on (1) ensuring the roll-out and continuous upgrading of broadband access to all South Africans, and (2) prioritising rail over road infrastructure;
- More people-focused infrastructure investment, such as (1) upgrading infrastructure networks in major urban areas and towns, to accommodate far higher densities and intensities, (2) installing and maintaining infrastructure networks in former township areas at scale, so as to develop these previously neglected areas into high-quality urban living spaces, and (3) developing quality public spaces, pedestrian walkways and efficient, affordable and safe public transport networks for use by all;
- More upgrading of ageing urban municipal service infrastructure and large-scale investment of municipal infrastructure in regional development anchors and rural service towns; and
- More investment in the enabling and catalytic infrastructure required for (1) renewable energy generation, storage and distribution, (2) smallholder farming and agro-processing, (3) tourism, culture and entertainment-led economic growth, and (4) innovation and knowledge-creation, packaging and transfer.

4.5 National Spatial Development Outcomes

4.5.1 Introduction

This section outlines a series of five National Spatial Development Outcomes that must and will be accomplished by (1) making the shifts as set out Section 4.3, and (2) using the National Spatial Development Levers as set out Section 4.4. These outcomes, each of which is briefly described in the following five sections, connect the National Spatial Development Vision and Logic in this part of the NSDF (Part Four) to the desired Post-Apartheid National Spatial Development Pattern as set out in Part Five.

4.5.2 National Spatial Outcome One

A network of consolidated, transformed and well-connected national urban nodes, regional development anchors, and development corridors that enable South Africa to derive maximum transformative benefit from urbanisation, urban living and inclusive economic development.

In terms of this outcome:

- Consolidated and quality settlements are provided with the necessary social and economic infrastructure for a fast-growing population in a way that considers (1) all our available natural and man-made resources, and enabling and empowering technologies, and (2) the need to provide for both current and future generations;
- National urban regions and nodes act as national and global gateways for trade, tourism and national political functions, and gateways for African and regional integration; and
- High-density urban nodes provide opportunities for interaction, innovation and enterprise development within existing, as well as new, inclusive and interaction centred enterprise economies;
A well-developed service infrastructure system acts as basis for just access to high quality social and other services in:

- A strong and well-functioning polycentric system of well-connected urban core areas within wider functional urban regions and corridors that offer a wide range of high-order medical, education, government, safety and security, trade-gateway and economic services is put in place; and
- A network of vibrant regional development anchor towns, with strong rural-rural connections to strategically located rural service towns that act as regional-rural service providers, is created.

### 4.5.3 National Spatial Outcome Two

National corridors of opportunity enable sustainable and transformative national development, urbanisation, urban consolidation, mutually beneficial urban and rural linkages, and ecological management.

In terms of this outcome:

- Economic growth, consolidated settlement development and trade infrastructure and trade are located within well-connected inter-regional and national development corridors and routes;
- Urbanisation, settlement growth and the dynamically changing needs of a growing population are directed, attracted to, and accommodated in a system of national urban regions and nodes, with specific emphasis on national-scale transformation and development corridors that provide opportunities for regional adaptation through:
  - Settlement transformation and consolidation and inclusive urban economies;
- Effective land-management and custodianship of national strategic water production and ecological sensitive areas; and
- Sustainable eco-agri-enterprise activities and livelihoods.

### 4.5.4 National Spatial Outcome Three

National connectivity and movement infrastructure systems are strategically located, extended and maintained, to support a diverse, adaptive and inclusive space economy and a set key national and regional gateway cities and towns.

In terms of this outcome:

- The national transport, trade and communication network is aligned with, and serves the identified nodes and development corridors in a way that supports the development needs of our growing population through (1) effective support for the economy, (2) the delivery of quality services, and (3) growth in employment;
- All national road, rail, air, maritime and ICT networks and infrastructure are aligned and prioritised, based on the demand and volume of services, as well as future growth in identified areas;
- Transport and logistic links serve natural resource-based economies in areas focused on (1) the export of raw materials, and (2) processing-activities related to mining, agriculture, forestry and manufacturing;
- Local freight needs, movement, passenger transport infrastructure and management skills/capabilities are spatially aligned and phased to support identified nodes and connecting corridors;
- Effective development of all national ports of entry, including (1) upgrading and maintenance of logistics infrastructure and (2) the
provision of efficient customs services, is ensured, to support the international and regional flow of goods, services and people;

- National water and energy-distribution infrastructure is expanded, upgraded and maintained to ensure national water and energy supply and distribution.

4.5.5 National Spatial Outcome Four

Productive rural regions, supported by sustainable resource economies and strong and resilient regional development anchors that provide access to people living in rural areas to the national and global economy.

In terms of this outcome:

- National food security, rural transformation and rural enterprise development and quality of life in rural South Africa are enabled and supported through a set of strong regional development anchors in functional regional-rural economies;
- Well-functioning, well-connected and productive rural regions (1) strengthen and enhance rural development and the well-being of rural communities, and (2) ensure the wise use, management and protection of nationally significant natural resources in these regions;
- Differentiated rural development (as called for in Chapter 6 of the NDP) entailing small, medium and large-scale agriculture, agro-processing, agro-eco enterprises, tourism and natural resource management and protection, play a key role in creating economic opportunities, and addressing poverty, unemployment and inequality in these regions and the country as a whole;
- Large and strategically located smaller towns in rural areas with significant rural-regional reach in terms of social service provision, tourism, personal services and administrative functions, act as regional development anchors to support functional regional-rural systems;
- Urban consolidation and growth, innovation and context-specific access to housing and service opportunities, both in sparsely-populated and densely-settled rural areas is pursued through the identification and development of strategically-located ‘regional development anchors’; and
- A set of well-connected, strategically located smaller towns act as ‘rural service centres’ to (1) ensure mutually beneficial urban-rural and rural-rural market linkages, and (2) provide distributed, but efficient access to critical social services and sustainable livelihood and settlement opportunities within diverse and productive rural regions.

4.5.6 National Spatial Outcome Five

National ecological Infrastructure and the national natural resource foundation is well-protected and managed, to enable sustainable and just access to water and other natural resources, both for current and future generations.

In terms of this outcome:

- The national water capture, storage and inter-regional transfer system is well-planned, funded and maintained, and, together with the introduction of far more stringent national, regional and local water-supply management measures, ensures (1) national water security and well-being, and (2) quality livelihoods for all;
- Ensuring water availability over the long-term takes centre-stage in well-aligned and integrated long-term national, provincial and municipal strategic and sector planning processes, and includes a focus on national and supra-national regional water-interdependencies;
• National ecological infrastructure and resources are protected and well-managed in officially protected national and provincial parks and ocean areas;
• National ecological and biodiversity management areas, as the foundation of our national ecological infrastructure system that sustains all life and livelihoods, are recognised as such, and protected by law; and
• In full recognition of our complex inter-regional and national spatial interdependencies, and the impact of spatial development on ecological resources and infrastructure systems, national spatial development and land-use is well-planned and effectively managed.

4.6 Putting it All Together: Life in South Africa 2050: The Long-Term National Spatial Development Vision, Logic and Levers in Action

In this section, the 2050-National Spatial Development Vision as tangible expression of what the desired future will entail once the Post-Apartheid National Spatial Development Vision, Logic and Levers have been put into action, is presented. It reads as follows...

75 Million South Africans

It is April 2050. A year earlier, during South Africa’s 55th ‘27 April-Democracy Celebrations’, the 75th million South African was born in the Buffalo City urban region. This massive urban conglomeration, is one of the ‘big four’ urban conurbations along the South African east coast, that are now jointly home to more than eight million South Africans. These four urban conurbations have grown rapidly – their growth equalling that of the Cape Town urban region, with its more than six million inhabitants. Despite their rapid growth, they are still a long way off from the Gauteng urban region with its population of more than 22 million people. Together with the booming cities of Polokwane, Mbombela, Rustenburg, Msunduzi and Mangaung, each with their populations of around 1 million people, the eleven urban conurbations are now home to around 42 million people, or around 60% of the South African population (see Figure 36).
Figure 36: National Spatial Development Pattern Transformed

Population Growth in:
- Existing Urban Regions (expected to house 47% of SA’s population)
- Existing Cities (expected to house 11% of SA’s population)
- Continued densification of dense settled rural production regions

Population Growth in:
- Existing Urban Regions and emerging large national urban nodes (expected to house 60% of SA’s population)
- National Coastal and National Transformation Corridors, in well-connected and consolidated existing, emerging and new (1) cities (expected to house 20% of SA’s population) and (2) towns
Eleven Urban Conurbations

In contrast to days gone by in which large parts of metropolitan South Africa were described as lifeless and boring, these areas are now hives of activity. Three-to-six storey mixed-use buildings are the norm in the buzzing former inner-city areas and along dense activity-streets in many of the suburbs of these erstwhile cities. Rooftops are in most cases used for (1) food production, preparation and distribution, (2) pop-up music performances, (3) poetry nights, and (4) plays. Some of them are used for solar and wind energy generation, alongside a myriad of other ways of doing so (1) on buildings and verandas, and (2) in larger commercial energy farms on high-lying areas and in the ocean, alongside the numerous thriving aquaculture projects.

Trade with African countries along the east coast of the continent, as well as with India and China, has boomed over the last three decades. In contrast to days gone by, this is far less in the form of the export of raw commodities, some of which are no longer shipped, such as coal, due to international carbon-trade-bans dating back to the early 2030s. These days, South Africa is a major exporter of a wide range of high-value handmade high-fashion clothing, jewellery, art, furniture, foodstuffs and beverages, which have become highly sought after in countries where nearly everything is made by machine. A key contributor to this new dawn for South Africa was the unveiling by government in the early 2020s of its massive and hugely successful ‘Smart Reindustrialisation Programme’ and its ‘Eastern South Africa Development Plan’. Driven by (1) the evermore-pressing drought in the western and north-western parts of the country, (2) the unfulfilled and deferred promise of the democracy that was won at such a high cost, and (3) the enormous agriculture, industrial and settlement development opportunities that lay east, and that were unlocked by the massive ‘New Land Reform Programme’ of the 2020s, government acted swiftly and decisively. And now, 25-30 years on, this is the outcome.

Transformation at Scale

The massive national-led ‘macro-restructuring and development plans’ not only resulted in shared economic growth and poverty alleviation at scale, but also assisted in inculcating a culture of ‘all-in’, targeted, integrated and coordinated planning. Out the door went untargeted, unplanned and unintegrated investment by government and the private sector, and the wastage of time and money by everyone pursuing their own plans and projects in their own backyards. In contrast to the early days of SPLUMA, when the introduction of the new suite of spatial planning instruments had very little impact on ridding the country of the legacy of colonial and Apartheid planning, the Act is now (1) used as intended, and (2) respected by government, communities and the private sector alike.

In addition to the positive impacts the macro-restructuring and development plans had on the national spatial development planning system, the success of these plans assisted in making South Africans believe that they can, and that it was possible to develop a truly transformed, liberated and prosperous post-Apartheid South Africa. The fruits of this freed-up, confident country are everywhere to be seen – from the dynamic interplay between (1) well-targeted, wise government investment and (2) innovative, organic urban growth and land development by communities, to the booming SADC region. It is especially this regional bloc and the connections and free flow of goods, services and people that it has enabled, that have played a huge role in the national economic growth rate of on average between 3% and 6% since the mid-2020s. The benefits have not only been felt on the national level and in the big urban areas, as also smaller towns and rural areas have gained from it. Thinking SADC, nationally and locally when planning and investing in infrastructure, played a huge role in this success.
A Good Life in Urban South Africa

Life on the streets of urban South Africa is very different to the first two decades of the 2000s. In contrast to life back then, the streets are now filled with people and there is excitement in the air. There are now also far fewer cars in the streets, and all you hear is people’s voices and music – walking and cycling are now the most popular means of moving around, and the electrical buses and taxis barely make a noise. Instead of pavements packed with cars, there now are (1) many small places to eat, (2) salons where you can have your hair done, (3) little shops selling anything from fresh produce to health foods, (4) research, education and innovation institutes, where knowledge and ideas flow freely, and (5) art and culture academies, where young artists are primed, and where you can enjoy music, poetry and short plays and buy paintings and sculptures. And it is here, in the vibrant streets and surrounding public spaces that never sleep, where many of the more than 75% of South Africans who now call ‘the city’ their home, make a life and live much of their lives. It is also here where South Africa and the rest of the world meet – where you see faces and hear languages from all over the planet. Many of these voices are those of tourists who love the vibrant and unique cosmopolitan atmosphere, and who have made South Africa one of the top ten tourist destinations in the world for the last 26 years in a row. Again, it was the foresight and decisive actions of government in the 2020s that succeeded in growing the sector into one of the largest and most dynamic in the country.

A Good Life in Rural South Africa

Rural South Africa is also in a very different shape to what is was in the late 2010s when it was a hard place to grow up in, money was tight, jobs were few and government services in many places non-existent or weak. This all started changing for the better when government launched its grant-funded ‘National Spatial Restructuring Priority Plans’ in the early 2020s, with their focus on developing ‘functional rural regions’ throughout rural South Africa, and which entailed the carefully planned roll-out and provision of quality services in each of these regions in a systemic way in accordance with government’s so-called ‘social services wheel’: In many rural towns, there are now clinics, police stations, schools, arts and culture academies and sporting facilities, and even the smallest villages have lightning-fast communication networks. Hundreds of thousands of graduates deployed over the many years as interns, researchers, and tutors to rural schools, also assisted in making these plans a success. Very soon trade connections between smaller places in rural South Africa started growing, which soon saw the development of strong rural regions in areas where once there was little else but destitution and despair. At the same time, with the growing movement of millions of retired South Africans to rural areas, the economies of these places have been given a strong and stable financial injection.

A Young, Free and Creative Country

Today, 56 years into democracy, South Africa is finally beginning to enjoy the full dividend of freedom and is fully able to (1) harness the energy, creativity and vitality of its many young people, and (2) fuse it with the innovative flares and creative blazes of young people from the rest of the continent and all over the world.
Figure 37: Putting it all together

MAKING A LIVING AND ENJOYING LIFE IN VIBRANT, HIGH-QUALITY PLACES

- **Trade** with Africa, India and China with a focus on export: high-value hand-made high-fashion clothing, jewellery, art, furniture, foodstuffs and beverages
- Growth in the **SADC region** with free flow of goods, services and people

- Development of **Strong Urban Regions** in Gauteng, eThekwini and Cape Town
- **Vibrant urban areas** with mixed-use buildings, dense pedestrian and cycling-friendly activity-streets, and rooftops used for food production, pop-up music performances, poetry nights, plays and solar and wind energy generation that have become major tourist attractions

- **Strong rural regions** with trade connections between smaller places
- Carefully chosen **rural service centres** with clinics, police stations, schools, arts and culture academies and sport facilities, and lightning-fast communication networks
PART FIVE: National Spatial Development and Investment Guidance
5.1 Introduction

In this part of the NSDF, the desired Ideal National Spatial Development Pattern for South Africa in 2050 is put forward. The National Spatial Development Frame: Ideal National Spatial Development Pattern (see Figure 39) provides an image of a:

Resilient, sustainable and inclusive post-Apartheid national spatial development pattern that is well-served by a consolidated system of international, national and regional development nodes and corridors, with a highly productive network of rural regions, where development nodes, rural regions and hard infrastructure are embedded within the capabilities and interdependencies of the national ecological infrastructure system.

This ideal pattern is located within a Supra-National Frame and ‘detailed-out’ in five ‘Sub-Frames’. These five Sub-Frames are:

- **NSDF Sub-Frame One**: Inter-Regional Connectivity;
- **NSDF Sub-Frame Two**: The National System of Nodes and Corridors;
- **NSDF Sub-Frame Three**: The National Resource Economy Regions;
- **NSDF Sub-Frame Four**: The National Movement and Connectivity Infrastructure System; and
- **NSDF Sub-Frame Five**: The National Ecological Infrastructure and Natural Resource System.

This Ideal National Spatial Development Pattern and the five Sub-Frames were constructed:

- In adherence to the priorities of the National Development Plan and the SPLUMA principles;
- In accordance with the National Spatial Development Vision and Logic;
- By making use of the National Spatial Development Levers; and
- In pursuit of the National Spatial Development Outcomes (see Figure 37).

Key considerations in constructing this Ideal National Spatial Development Pattern and the five Sub-Frames were:

- National spatial development realities and national and international trends, movement patterns and technological advances, and (1) the challenges they present, and (2) the opportunities they offer;
- A significant growth in our national population of between 17 and 22 million people between today and 2050;
- The (1) unique development potentials of places and areas, and (2) the roles they will have to play in national, regional and local economies, to realise our national development objectives of inclusive economic growth, job creation and poverty eradication;
- The need to (1) safeguard national food security, (2) make the transition to a low-carbon energy future, (3) ensure adequate provision of safe and affordable water, (4) protect, manage and maintain key ecosystems and the services they provide, and (5) recognise the interconnectedness and interdependencies between places; and
- The multiple threats associated with climate change, such as (1) rising temperatures in the western and central parts of the country, (2) reduced water availability, and (3) growing unpredictability in the seasonal pattern of rainfall.
Together, the Ideal National Spatial Development Pattern and the five Sub-Frames provide:

- A national spatial schema to inform, direct, prioritise and guide all future infrastructure investment and development spending decisions by government and the private sector, to (1) optimise place-based potentials and spatial interdependencies, and (2) realise the 2050-National Spatial Development Vision and our core national development objectives, as encapsulated in our National Development Paradigm;
- Strategic spatial development and investment guidance to spatially direct plans, budgets and actions of public and private sector actors, to, over time (1) capitalise on key national spatial assets, locational potentials and agglomeration opportunities, and (2) bring about decisive, rapid, sustainable and inclusive national development and transformation at scale;
- A carefully chosen, distinct set of nationally-significant places, connectors and areas in and around which to align, integrate and coordinate investment by the private sector and the three spheres of government when preparing and reviewing (1) area/place-based provincial, regional and municipal SDFs, and (2) sector-specific and macro-infrastructure national and SADC-focused investment plans;
- A brief outline of the key role-players responsible for driving spatial transformation, national adaptation and ‘national spatial development accountability’, as well as (1) the institutions that will be involved, and (2) the instruments that will be used in all three these regards; and
- A spatially-explicit assessment and accounting frame for monitoring and evaluating all spending and investment decisions by government and the private sector in space (specific places and interrelated spaces) and time (the short, medium and long-term).

Following on from the ideal spatial pattern and the sub-frames, is a set of five National Spatial Action Areas (NSAAs). These NSAAs represent the most urgent strategic spatial development catalysts to (1) bring about radical spatial transformation at scale, and (2) manage and mitigate rising national risks, and as such, require immediate national action. Concerted and sustained intergovernmental collaboration is required in these NSAAs over the short term to:

- Target context-specific, focused and catalytic national spatial development interventions; and
- Kickstart the process of aligning plans, budgets and departmental plans in and between spheres of government around national spatial development priorities.
Figure 38: From the Ideal National Spatial Development Pattern to the NSDF Sub-Frames
Figure 39: National Spatial Development Framework: The Ideal Post-Apartheid National Spatial Development Pattern
5.2 Supra-National Framing

5.2.1 Spatial Development and Investment Guidance

Supra-national development and investment in four inter-regional spatial networks are of particular importance to South Africa (see Figure 40). These relate to (1) energy supply, (2) transport and logistics services, (3) shared water resources, and (4) ecological infrastructure:

- **Regionally-connected electricity networks** enable South Africa to (1) buy electricity from Lesotho, Mozambique and Namibia when surplus is required, or (2) sell to Botswana, Lesotho, Mozambique, Namibia, Swaziland, Zambia and Zimbabwe when it has excess production. The SADC Energy Sector Plan indicates that, apart from the infrastructure projects in South Africa, there are also a number of planned (or by now current) projects aimed at increasing power generation in the region. Nationally, these are also under consideration through the Electricity Grid Infrastructure and Gas Pipeline Extension programme, for which a national Strategic Environmental Assessment (SEA) process is currently underway. Renewable energy has emerged as a rapidly-growing source that can add vastly to the energy mix in the region. Renewable energy projects have, however, faced serious challenges related to a lack of (1) policy and regulation, and (2) connecting infrastructure and financing.

- **Transport and logistics infrastructure** has been identified as key to creating an enabling environment to (1) achieving the goal of sustainable regional socio-economic development, and (2) closing the widening gap in the provision of high-quality, efficient infrastructure, especially when considering road and rail infrastructure. In response to this, SADC adopted a spatial development corridor strategy in 2008. While railway lines are considered as crucial for (1) improved efficiency of movement of freight in the region, and (2) the protection of infrastructure investment in the regional road network, the railway network has seen only minimal improvement, revitalisation and expansion. Poor road quality and lack of maintenance in certain areas remain a critical concern in the case of both regional and urban roads. Although capacity currently exists on the road network, projections for 2027 suggest the need for (1) further road-widening, (2) the construction of bypasses for major cities and passing-lanes in hilly regions, and (3) more efficient border-posts. While the SADC railways generally operate far below their original design capacities, they cannot increase their volumes because of (1) poor track condition, (2) lack of locomotive and wagon availability, and (3) low operating capital. With regards to new railway investments directly impacting upon or driven by South Africa, the TRANSNET rail investment plan indicates a new rail line to Botswana (the Lephalale-Mahalapye line) for coal transport, as well as the upgrading of several lines to the major regional harbours, to support mineral exports.

- **Water availability** across SADC varies. The countries with the greatest demand unfortunately also have the most limited supply. South Africa shares several water catchment basins with neighbouring countries including (1) the Orange-Senqu basin (Namibia and Botswana), (2) the Limpopo basin (Botswana, Zimbabwe and Mozambique), (3) the Inkomati basin (Swaziland and Mozambique), and (4) the Maputo-Usungo-Pangola Basin (Swaziland and Mozambique). It is projected that by 2025, two of South Africa’s major river basins (the Orange-Senqu and the Limpopo basin) will be under stress, i.e. meaning they will have less than 500 cubic metres of water available per person annually. The SADC-Protocol establishes a legally-binding...
framework for transboundary water management in the region. Within the context of recent water challenges to sustain livelihoods, agriculture, mining, industrial and service economies in our country, the regional importance of (1) transboundary water management, and (2) sustained and enhanced biodiversity and natural ecosystems, including wetlands (which are also the bases for viable rural livelihoods and tourism) is clearly evident.

- **Ecological infrastructure** management and collaboration regarding risk management and beneficiation associated with identified strategic national protected and management areas within SADC is of critical importance for South Africa to reach national development objectives and international agreements.

The priorities related to supra-national cross-border and regional inter-relationships can be summarised as follows:

- Facilitation of trade and movement in the SADC trade bloc;
- Strengthening and expansion of South Africa’s role in facilitating inter-regional trade and providing regional gateways (i.e. our core urban regions and nodes) (see NSDF Sub-Frames 1 and 2);
- Protection of strategic regional ecosystems and bio-diversity through shared management of International Transfrontier Parks; and
- Effective and efficient management of cross-border movement, service delivery and inter-regional migration.
5.3 NSDF Sub-Frame 1: National Urban Network

5.3.1 Spatial Development and Investment Guidance

Settlement development, both in urban and rural South Africa, must be undertaken in such a way that it (1) increases development density, (2) reduces urban sprawl, (3) prevents the unsustainable use of productive land, and (4) optimises investment in infrastructure networks (see Figure 41).

Inclusive economic development, livelihoods, land and housing: In accordance with this objective, municipalities, supported by provincial and national government sector departments, must:

- Prepare and implement appropriate local and regional economic interventions;
- Enable and support a wide spectrum of livelihood opportunities;
- Ensure timeous identification, acquisition and release of well-located land; and
- Make provision for a diverse range of housing options for a diverse range of household types.\(^{15}\)

In rural settlements, it is imperative that (1) environmentally-sensitive settlement planning be undertaken, (2) ‘rural design’ be introduced, and (3) viable, new agri-eco-focused enterprises be established and existing ones supported.

Social services and settlements: If South Africa is to meet the social needs of its very young, but also increasingly older population, then a rational process of providing social infrastructure is required. The NSDF is therefore underpinned by a ‘national settlement service provision framework system’ in terms of which social services are provided in accordance with the (1) role and (2) service-reach of the type of settlement on the national settlement network. This system provides the basis for guiding investment in infrastructure and social services, especially by national sector departments (see Figure 42). However, this system will only work if government as a whole adopts it to guide its social infrastructure planning and investment. As a starting point, it is recommended that priority be given to embedding this system in all of government.

National and regional connectivity: The national network of nodes, smaller settlements and corridors requires that (1) national nodes and smaller settlements are well-connected to each other, and (2) national nodes are well-connected to the rest of the world through a range of transport modes and communications networks. This requires that:

- Road and rail routes that are of national importance be built, maintained and upgraded, as and where necessary;
- Rail be prioritised over road for freight movement; and
- The availability, affordability, safety and quality of mass public passenger transport be drastically improved.

Water availability: Given our dire water situation, water demand must be curbed, water sources must be augmented, and the little water we have, protected from loss through well-maintained infrastructure. In addition to this, (1) our ecological infrastructure must be protected and its use be well managed, and (2) new settlement development must be restricted and existing settlement growth carefully managed in water-stressed catchments and regions.
Figure 41: National Urban Network Sub-Frame

NATIONAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT PRIORITIES
- National Urban Regions
- Regional Urban Nodes
- Development Anchors
- Rural Service Centres
- National Coastal Corridor
- National Transformation Corridor
- National Innovation Belt
- National and Inter-regional Connecting and Development Corridor

NATIONAL URBAN REGIONS
- Gauteng
- eThekwini
- Cape Town

[Map showing National Urban Network Sub-Frame]
5.3.2 National Urban Network: Spatial Development and Investment Priorities

Spatial Development and Investment Guidance

National Urban Regions (see Figure 41)

- Consolidate urbanisation in compact, productive, sustainable, inclusive and well-governed urban core regions.
- Prioritise infrastructure maintenance to mitigate against the expected impact of natural and climate change-related hazards on large numbers of people, especially the poor and most vulnerable members of society, and avoid repetitive infrastructure-repair costs.
- Manage demand and maintain, expand and refocus our infrastructure network, to enable and sustain bulk water supply and energy distribution within and to urban regions.
- Effectively utilise, protect and manage high-value agricultural lands, ecological infrastructure and national manmade and natural environmental assets, and mitigate down-stream impacts on water bodies, water catchments and other natural resources.
- Actively support national and international programmes aimed at climate change mitigation of CO2-emissions, and introduce local policies and measures to assist such programmes.
- Utilise innovation, enterprise development and job creation opportunities in (1) agro-eco-industries, (2) tertiary and service sectors, (3) tourism, (4) knowledge-creation, and (5) cultural and entertainment industries.
- Maintain and upgrade road and rail routes in urban regions. Prioritise rail for bulk freight, and improve the affordability of intercity public passenger transport.

National Urban Nodes (see Figure 41)

- Consolidate and direct the rapid population growth in the eastern half of the country to national urban nodes, clusters and corridors by creating (1) quality human settlements, and (2) centres of human capital excellence, innovation, trade, inclusive green economies and regional enterprises, and in the process reaping the urban dividend.
- Within distressed and sparsely populated areas and areas that are becoming increasingly more arid, consolidate settlement growth in (1) existing large urban nodes, and (2) emerging and fast-growing urban nodes.
- In addition to strengthening and consolidating expected population growth in range of urban regions, and existing cities and intermediary cities, proactively support the development and emergence of a number of new cities in identified densely populated and high potential transformation corridors.

National Spatial Development Priorities

Strengthen and Consolidate Existing Urban Regions, i.e.:
- The Gauteng Urban Region;
- The eThekwini Urban Region; and
- The Cape Town Urban Region.

Strengthen Existing Urban Nodes, e.g.:
- Mbombela, Richards Bay, Buffalo City and Mangaung in existing and identified growth corridors.

Support Urban Nodes Under Stress, e.g.:
- Kimberley and Rustenburg in economically declining regions.

Develop New/Emerging Urban Nodes, e.g.:
- Support emergence of new cities Mthatha, Hazyview, Tzaneen and Lephalale.
National Network of Regional Development Anchors (see Figures 41 and 42)

- Prioritise and strengthen strategically located regional development anchor towns in productive rural regions and priority national development, trade and transport corridors to provide (1) a range of services within the specific towns/cities and surrounding network of settlements and productive rural regions (see Figures 40 and 41 and Annexure B for a list of towns and cities).
- Support and strengthen strategically located regional development anchors through (1) targeted settlement planning and development, (2) higher-order social infrastructure provision, and (3) focused support for small and medium-sized enterprise development, industrialisation and economic diversification.
- Use the investment and enhanced social service provision (see Figure 42) in regional development anchors to encourage officials working in these rural regions to stay in these settlements and contribute to the local economy, instead of commuting to larger towns or cities on a daily or weekly basis.
- Clearly identify the role of specific settlements as gateways and interchanges on the regional public transportation network, and incorporate these as such into the planning of functional rural regions.
- Strengthen the connectivity of traditional areas and rural settlements with (1) higher-order urban settlements, and (2) economic systems in functional rural regions, by making use of the road and rail network and regional corridor development.
- Plan social infrastructure provision within a regional-rural setting using the ‘social services wheel’, and use such investment to establish and create well-functioning, compact, lively, rural settlements and regional rural systems (see Figure 42 and Annexure B).

Strengthen and Consolidate Existing Regional Development Anchor Towns, e.g.:

- Nodes on strategic routes, e.g. Harrismith, Estcourt and Clanwilliam; and
- Bigger nodes in denser regions, e.g. Phalaborwa, George and Mossel Bay.

Support Regional Development Anchors under stress, e.g.:

- In fast-growing towns with extended service delivery demands in densely-developed border regions, e.g. Musina, Pongola, Mmabatho, Mokopane, Tzaneen and Makhado;
- In nodes requiring consolidation and management support in arid, environmentally vulnerable regions, e.g. Upington and Kuruman;
- In nodes on strategic national routes, e.g. Beaufort West and Vryburg; and
- In smaller nodes in sparsely populated regions, e.g. Springbok and Calvinia that serve a large hinterland.

Create New/Transform towns into Regional Development Anchors, e.g.:

- Towns in National Transformation Corridors, e.g. Giyani, Thohoyandou, Bushbuckridge, Mahikeng, Kuruman, Jozini, Ulundi, Kokstad and Butterworth.
## Spatial Development and Investment Guidance

### National Network of Rural Service Centres (see Figure 41)
- Rural development must be supported through a hierarchical network of prioritised service centres (see Figure 42 and Annexure B) where people in rural areas and settlements can optimally be provided with core municipal services, social and government services, and where rural logistics and support can be provided to optimally support rural development.
- Towns that act as border and trade posts need special attention.
- In arid areas and areas experiencing a decline in population, settlements must be consolidated and maintenance prioritised in such core towns.
- In dense rural settlement regions, consolidation within nodal centres and rural design is required.

### Other Smaller Towns and Settlements in South Africa
- Consolidate and provide basic services to the local population in a network of small towns and settlements (see Annexure B for a list of these towns).
- Urban consolidation and basic service delivery in growing regions must keep pace with population growth and economic development.
- In densely populated and growing rural regions, (1) settlement must be consolidates in nodes and (2) spatial planning and rural design done to ensure managed and quality future settlement development.
- Specific support must be provided to (1) towns that act as border towns and trade posts, and (2) growing towns in border regions.
- In areas that are ecologically-sensitive and that experience harsh climatic conditions, new settlement must be discouraged.
- In arid areas and areas experiencing a decline in population, settlements must be consolidated and maintenance prioritised in the core towns.
- Mining development must be decoupled from settlement development.

### National Spatial Development Priorities

#### Strengthen and Consolidate Existing Service Centres, e.g.:
- Towns and border and trade posts such as Manguzi, Komatipoort, Ladybrand and Kamaqhekeza.

#### Support Service Centres in Stressed Regions, e.g.:
- Victoria West, Carnarvon, Groblershoop and Koffiefontein.

#### Create New Service Centres and Transform Existing Settlements:
- Settlements in dense rural settlement regions, e.g. Barkley East, Bizana, Dundee, Madibogo and Flagstaff.

#### Strengthen and Consolidate Existing Towns, e.g.:
- Service Towns: Modjadjiiskloof, Maclear, Marblehall and Paul Pietersburg; and
- Trade posts and growing towns in border regions, e.g. Alldays, Clarens, Maluti and Rhodes.

#### Support Towns in Stressed Regions, e.g.:
- Areas experiencing a decline in population, e.g. Reivilo, Sannieshof, Pofadder.

#### Develop New Towns and Transform Existing Dense Settlements:
- In dense growing rural regions, e.g. Qumbu and Pomeroy.
Figure 42: National and Regional Settlement and Service Network
5.3.3 National Urban Development Corridors and Growth Regions: Spatial Development and Investment Priorities

Spatial Development and Investment Guidance

Development within National Coastal Corridors (see Figure 41)

- The Coastal Growth and Development Corridor along the eastern and south coasts (N2) is supported as an area of strong interconnection between high-value rural resource production, ecological resource regions, popular tourist destinations, comfortable climatic zones and urban nodes.
- This corridor also provides opportunities for the consolidation of existing cities and the development of ‘new’ cities supported by well-developed multi-modal connectivity infrastructure. This requires that:
  - Port and airport development be strengthened in support of inter-regional trade flows and efficiency; and
  - Small harbour development in support of the fishing, tourism and maritime economy at identified coastal regional development anchor and rural service centres be maintained, expanded and accelerated.

Development within National Transformation Corridors (see Figure 41)

- Consolidate settlement development and support the development of new cities in areas (1) of significant population growth, and (2) that are facing significant challenges and offer sizeable opportunities for transformation.
- Develop regional and municipal resource management, urban-rural and eco-agri development strategies in strategic national water and agriculture production regions.
- Accelerate small harbour development in support of the fishing, tourism and maritime economy in Regional Development Anchors and Rural Service Centres along the coast.
- Undertake integrated human capital development, to enable a generation of young people to reap the benefits of urbanisation through (1) human capital development, and (2) the opening-up of urban economies to enable and support a multiplicity of livelihood options.
- Use land administration and urban land reform to guide the interface between settlement planning, land-use, development and infrastructure planning in fast-growing formal and traditional settlement areas.
- Introduce and upgrade sustainable built environment infrastructure as stimulus to enterprise development, with a focus on (1) housing, (2) basic service delivery, (3) public transport, and (4) rural-urban and rural-rural connections.
- Introduce and/or strengthen effective regional collaboration, partnerships and cooperative governance models, to ensure (1) mutually beneficial natural resource-use and land development, and (2) optimise national, regional and local economic development benefits.

National Spatial Development Priorities

**Strengthen and Consolidate Existing Corridors:**
- The KwaZulu-Natal Coastal Corridor (Port Shepstone to Richards Bay); and
- The Garden Route (Mossel Bay to Nelson Mandela Bay).

**Develop New Transformation Corridors:**
- The Eastern Coastal Transformation Corridor: Nelson Mandela Bay via Mthatha to Port Shepstone;
- The Eastern Escarpment Transformation Corridor: Mbombela to Thohoyandou; and
- The North-Western Transformation Corridor: Mahikeng via Vryburg and Taung to (1) Kuruman and Postmasburg and (2) Sol Plaatje.
### Spatial Development and Investment Guidance

**Develop alongside Inter-Regional and National Freight and Development Corridors**

(see [Figure 41](#))

- Consolidate nodal development to support inter-regional development corridors and trade with SADC, which includes (1) a focus on SADC corridors, and (2) improving cost and efficiency at border and port facilities on route, to handle greater international and regional trade flows.

- Strengthen regional trade and flows on existing corridors, to support development of cities and towns on these corridors.

- Prioritise infrastructure (ports, harbours and logistics infrastructure) and efficient operations of nationally-significant trade and movement networks.

### National Spatial Development Priorities

**Existing National and Inter-regional Freight and Development Corridors to be Strengthened:**

- Significant export and import trade routes from Gauteng (1) via the N4 to Komatipoort, (2) via the N3 to eThekwini, and (3) via the N1 north to Musina.
5.3.4 National Action and Key Role-Players

Strategic investment in national urban growth regions will require (1) high levels of intergovernmental coordination and alignment, as well as (2) the introduction of ‘joint national spatial accountability’ in terms of the achievement of national spatial development outcomes. Crucial actions that will have to be undertaken in these regards are the following:

- Urban areas experiencing large-scale urbanisation will need (1) the support of initiatives such as the IUDF and the DHS’s long-term housing plans, with a focus on ensuring financial viability in human settlement development, and (2) regional-scale collaboration, with a focus on private sector, civil society and city government involvement;
- Coordination will need to be done between long-term infrastructure planning, implementation and maintenance, with a specific focus on (1) national water storage, allocation and availability, and (2) the national rail and road network, which necessitates harmonisation between IPAP, NATMAP 2050 and the NSDF;
- Capacity shortfalls in the construction, maintenance and upgrading of bulk water, energy and transport infrastructure at local level will require dedicated support from the national and provincial departments responsible for municipal and spatial planning, with care having to be taken to ensure that such support assists in the creation and maintenance of resilient and sustainable urban regions; and
- Urban land reform and the timeous release of suitable land in the right places must be done, which may require the provision of support to municipalities with (1) the identification, acquisition and release of such land, and (2) the use of such land in ensuring catalytic development, spatial transformation and inclusive growth.
5.4 NSDF Sub-Frame 2: National Resource Production Regions

5.4.1 Spatial Development and Investment Guidance

Spatial development and investment directives and identified national spatial development priorities to develop the envisaged national resource production regions (see Figure 43) are outlined below.

Rural regions and regional development anchors: The development of productive, functional rural regions throughout South Africa requires:

- The development of viable, robust and resilient regional rural economies that recognise and respect the limitations and interdependencies of the national ecological infrastructure and natural resources on which they depend;
- The (1) ‘delineation’ of functional rural regions, and (2) the identification of regional development anchors in such regions that are located on the national transport network;
- High levels of (1) national-regional connectivity between such regional development anchors, and urban nodes and regions, and (2) regional-local connectivity between such anchors and the towns and villages in their respective regions; and
- Sound spatial planning, consolidation of the urban development, and minimisation of the urban footprint, in such regions.

Diversity, strengths and cautions: While the concept of regional rural development is a generic one, the spaces in which it is to be utilised are far from that. When considering the diverse endowments and assets of these rural regions, it emerges that:

- The eastern half of the country has areas with moderate to high levels of ‘agricultural potential’:
  - Although agriculture has been developed in many of the areas where this potential exists, there still remain areas of high-agricultural potential that have not yet been fully utilised; and
  - At the same time, there are also significant areas of dense human settlement on high-value agricultural land;
- The western half of the country has less agricultural potential, primarily due to far less annual rainfall in these areas than in the eastern half of the country:
  - Regions in this half of the country do, however, have a range of other opportunities, notably tourism, conservation and mineral-resource extraction;
- Both halves (east and west) hold most of the key national ground and surface-water production areas that are critical for water supply to the country’s major urban regions, cities and towns, and, as such, this necessitate spatial planning, wise use of natural resources and effective land use management; and
- A number of key national conservation areas also feature prominently in the areas identified as productive rural regions, and although some communities already do benefit from these resources, much more can be gained from this relationship, notably in the area of eco-tourism and management of ecological infrastructure.

Sustainable resource use and land-use management: Intergovernmental cooperation and collaboration in (1) the development of productive rural regions, and (2) the management of natural resource use in such regions will be required. This is especially important in municipalities with significant parcels of high-value agricultural land that are under pressure from human settlement and/or mining. The focus of such collaboration,
which should have a (1) spatial planning, (2) land use management and (3) inclusive growth component, must at least be on:

- **Water security**, including the mitigation of the impacts of regional rural development on national water resource availability and quality;
- **Food security**, including (1) the sustainable use of high-value agricultural land, and (2) the protection of national food production areas; and
- **Land reform**, including (1) the pursuit of justice in access to high-value agricultural land, and (2) the provision of support to new and emerging farmers in such areas.

**Climate change adaptation:** Climate change in the form of (1) less rain, (2) greater unpredictability in rainfall, (3) higher temperatures, (4) more very hot days, and (5) a greater risk of veld-fires, has far-reaching implications for agricultural produce and habitation in all of South Africa’s productive rural regions. Even in regions where the impacts of climate change will be less severe, the more severe impacts in other regions will lead to increased pressure on the use of land and other natural resources in such ‘less severely affected regions’.

In order to counter and mitigate the impacts of climate change, **innovative agricultural adaptation**, involving a move to (1) agricultural commodities that are more resistant to extreme and harsh conditions, and (2) agricultural practices that are better suited to the anticipated adverse climatic conditions, will be required. At the same time, climate change may open up opportunities for new economic activities in some regions, notably in the area of solar energy generation.
Figure 43: National Resource Production Regions Sub-Frame
5.4.2 National Resource Production Area: National Spatial Development and Investment Priorities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spatial Development and Investment Guidance</th>
<th>National Spatial Development Priorities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Resource Production Heartland</strong> (see Figure 43)</td>
<td><strong>Strengthen the Existing Activities in Productive Rural Regions:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Protection of high-value agricultural land through the use of ‘rural edges’ at the interfaces of regional rural regions with urban regions and nodes (see Annexure B) and the management of competing land uses.</td>
<td>• In the ‘Central Heartland Region’ located around the Gauteng, North-West, Mpumalanga and Limpopo Agriculture, Mining and Densely-Settled Urban Region.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Protection of high-value agricultural land, putting it to good use, and managing competition for development on such land, within the pursuit of (1) national food security, (2) economic growth, and (3) social stability.</td>
<td><strong>Support Stressed Rural Regions:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Management of the development of land with high-agricultural production potential, and encouragement of small-scale agriculture and resource enterprise development.</td>
<td>• Intensive rehabilitation and strict control will be required in mining areas to limit water, air and soil pollution and land degradation;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The use of renewable and clean energy in coal mining regions will need to be incentivised; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Regional Economic Innovation will need to be undertaken to mitigate the impact of declining demand and employment in mining areas in the areas around Gauteng and the Platinum Mining Belt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Agri-Enterprise Regions</strong> (see Figure 43)</td>
<td><strong>Create New and Transform Existing Productive Rural Regions:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Productive use of high value agricultural land to support national food security.</td>
<td>• Support and encourage urban agriculture and intensive agri-enterprise production in cities, towns and urban regions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Rehabilitation of degraded land and effective land-use management.</td>
<td><strong>Strengthen Existing Productive Rural Regions:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Improvement of rural-to-rural connections, market accessibility and key agricultural-production infrastructure.</td>
<td>• Productive use of high-value agricultural land to support national food security.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Enhancement of connectivity through well-planned infrastructure investment and settlement consolidation in well-connected regional development anchors.</td>
<td><strong>Create New and Transform Existing Productive Rural Regions:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Focus on the densely-settled Eastern and Northern Region in the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and Limpopo Provinces; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Improve rural-rural and urban-rural connectivity.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Spatial Development and Investment Guidance

#### Arid Agri-Region (see Figure 43)
- This arid area has extensive agricultural activities, with (1) pockets and stretches of intensive irrigation-farming, (2) mining clusters, (3) renewable energy farms/plants, and (4) small, compact settlements.
- The impact of climate change in the already drier and hotter western parts of the country (where large areas of locally-significant agricultural activities from an (1) economic activity and (2) job-provision perspective are located) will require regional agricultural adaptation-support and effective land use management.
- Innovative farming techniques and technologies must be introduced and supported in selected arid and semi-arid areas of the country, by making wise and smart use of groundwater and/or water transfers.
- Regional development initiatives to share capacity, research and innovation in support of innovative regional development must be encouraged.

### National Spatial Development Priorities

#### Support Stressed Rural Regions:
- A good example of this is the Nama-Karoo Regional SDF Initiative and the intensive multi-stakeholder engagement and collaboration around it.

#### Strengthen Existing Productive Rural Regions
- Strengthen, use and expand on existing irrigation schemes, innovative farming practices and tourism activities.

#### Create New and Transform:
- ‘Irrigation innovation areas’ that make wise use of existing and new dams, irrigation schemes and canals must be designed and introduced as a matter of urgency.
Spatial Development and Investment Guidance

Eco-Resource Production and Livelihood Regions (see Figure 43 and Annexure B)

- Enhance (1) the productive capacity, (2) environmental and livelihood quality, (3) cultural heritage, and (4) natural resource-access of these regions through effective agrarian practices and enterprise development programmes that are focussed on natural resource restoration and custodianship.
- Discourage further land and settlement development, and carefully manage existing settlements and land uses in productive agricultural regions that play a crucial role in national strategic water production, national food security and rural livelihoods.
- Pursue effective management and custodianship of national strategic water source production regions.
- Ensure efficient rural-to-rural connectivity in rural regions, to enhance the prospects of making a life in these areas.
- Rehabilitate degraded land and ensure effective land use management, settlement consolidation, improved rural connectivity and an eco-resource related enterprise focus, to (1) provide opportunities for livelihoods and industry development, and (2) support national water availability.
- Enhance and further expand the value and contribution of the Oceans’ and Aqua Economy Areas to (1) local livelihoods and regional, and (2) national economic development.

National Spatial Development Priorities

Support Stressed Rural Regions:

- The Southwestern Region (i.e. the Western Cape) where changing climatic conditions will (1) significantly impact on national food production and (2) require regional agricultural adaptation and effective land use management;
- The Central (Gauteng and Limpopo) Regions where nationally significant water and food production are impacted by human settlement and mining activities, and require effective land-use management;
- The Northern KwaZulu-Natal Region (the Umkhanyakude DM), with nationally and regionally significant protected areas; and
- The Eastern Drakensberg Region including the Natal Midlands and extending into Mpumalanga along the Eastern Escarpment.

Create New and Transform:

- The densely-settled Eastern and Northern Regions (Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and Limpopo);
- The arid region on the western border of the Northwest Province extending into the Northern Cape; and
- The eastern border of the central high-productive value agricultural land and Central Heartland Region.
Spatial Development and Investment Guidance

**Mining and Energy Production Areas and Supportive Infrastructure**

- Collaborative, long-term regional development in new mining exploration areas is required, which includes (1) scenario development, (2) population migration projections, (3) diversification strategies, (4) cost/benefit-modelling of regional infrastructure provision, municipal service delivery, and the cumulative impacts of the mining activities, and (5) the optimisation of regional and local development opportunities.
- Rehabilitation and negative impact mitigation must extend beyond agreements on paper and be enforced on the ground.
- In the case of new mines, where (1) the levels of automation and mechanisation are low, and (2) sizeable numbers of workers will still be required, housing provision and/or settlement expansion must take place in regional development anchors or existing small towns where adequate social services are available. In deciding on the licencing of such new mining operations, (1) national and regional development priorities, and (2) the cumulative impacts of the envisaged mining activities and further such activities on the creation of functional rural regions must be considered. Where possible, mining companies should become far more involved in the development of functional, resilient rural regions, which may include investments in (1) hard, transport and connectivity, and (2) soft, social services-infrastructure.
- Limit development of new mining-dependent towns.
- Support and diversify economies in declining mining towns and regions.

**National Spatial Development Priorities**

**Existing Productive Rural Regions to be Strengthened:**

- Long-term infrastructure planning must be informed by changes in the mining industry;
- Regional development and resource management must be used to support further mining and associated activities in the northern mining regions; and
- In national urban regions, enterprise opportunities, large-scale innovations in service delivery and disruptive technologies need to be researched and explored, to support urban economies and national well-being.

**Support in Stressed Rural Regions:**

- The Mpumalanga Coal Mining and Coal Fired Power Plant Region will come under increased pressure as a result of (1) environmental concerns, (2) a possible decline in the demand for coal, and (3) large-scale employment losses, which requires regional-scale and industry-orientated innovation and the introduction of measures to reduce emissions; and
- Within remote and arid regions in the western and north-western parts of the country, the cumulative impact of a growing number of wind farms, solar plants and mining and energy-related projects should be carefully evaluated in regional context. The growth of existing towns close to these areas is supported, but new and on-site settlement far away from existing towns is not.
5.4.3 National Action and Key Role-Players

The strategic development of productive rural regions and regional development anchors, and the consolidation of regional settlement patterns, will require (1) high levels of intergovernmental coordination and alignment, as well as (2) the introduction of ‘joint accountability’ in terms of the achievement of clearly-defined regional spatial development outcomes. Crucial actions that will have to be undertaken in these regards are the following:

- Ensuring broad-based support for the regional-rural development approach, and sustained, active collaboration by national and provincial sector departments, traditional leaders, municipalities, the private sector and communities in (1) undertaking the necessary regional-rural planning and related long-term infrastructure investment, (2) tying-in key settlement development plans and initiatives, such as the IUDF, the DHS’s long-term housing plans, and municipal IDPs and SDFs to these regional-rural plans, (3) implementing the plans in a coordinated and integrated manner, (4) monitoring the implementation of the plans, and (5) building the necessary capacity to undertake such regional rural planning and development; and
- Supporting national food security through the protection and productive use of high-value agriculture land, as identified and directed by DAFF, and ensuring that all relevant national and provincial sector departments and municipalities account for their use and management of high-value agricultural land; and
- Pursuing and assisting with initiatives aimed at regional economic diversification and transition in mining-dependent areas, which may involve (1) scenario development, (2) research, (3) piloting of proposals, and (4) the provision of enterprise development and support, and entail the involvement of a wide range of role-players, including the mining industry, organised labour, municipalities, traditional leaders, SALGA, universities and research councils.
5.5 NSDF Sub-Frame 3: National Connecting and Movement Infrastructure

5.5.1 Spatial Development and Investment Guidance

Spatial development and investment directives and identified national spatial development priorities to develop the envisaged national connecting and movement infrastructure (see Figure 4) are outlined below.

Long-term planning and investment: Given the high costs and long life-cycles involved in large scale infrastructure investment, timeous planning, evaluation and design of appropriate geo-specific national economic infrastructure is critical. Transitions in (1) national settlement patterns, (2) major economic activities and sectors, (3) climate change, and (4) technological advances, notably in transport, energy generation and communication networks need to be planned for well in advance, and modes and patterns of infrastructure investment adjusted accordingly. These actions require (1) the phasing of new connections and extensions, and the maintenance of existing infrastructure, and (2) the initiation of collaborative long-term planning with regards to national and inter-regional land and sea-based connecting and enabling infrastructure.

Movement and connection infrastructure networks: These networks are fundamental to (1) national spatial development, (2) the utilisation of national economic opportunities, (3) the creation of a national system of national urban cores, smaller settlements and national spatial development corridors, and (4) international, continental and SADC trade and connectivity. The effective functioning of these networks requires that:

- Investment in rail is prioritised over road for economic, ecological and efficiency reasons;
- Rail infrastructure is rehabilitated and expanded to support national freight movement and trade with SADC;
- All the roads in the core national network are appropriately surfaced and the key routes prioritised for regular maintenance;
- Logistics hubs, ports (airports and harbours) and border posts are maintained and expanded, as and where necessary, to keep pace with national economic growth and reduce delays at ports; and
- ICT networks are extended to the whole country with national corridors, urban regions, cities, regional development anchors, and rural service centres being prioritised, and the rest of the country incrementally covered over time.

Energy-transmission networks: Maintenance of the national electricity grid infrastructure is crucial and timeous expansion of the network must be done as and where required from a national development perspective. Where new sources of energy are to be introduced to the national energy mix, the following should be observed:

- Solar and wind: Production is to be located in close proximity to the national grid or users, and in distributed networks in low-density areas/small remote towns where it should be delivered though small-scale distributed networks;
- Nuclear: Nuclear power stations must be located in close proximity to large water bodies (for cooling) and the existing national distribution network; and
- Gas: Gas pipelines must be spatially located in such a way that they do not encumber, but support national economic development.
Figure 44: National Connectivity and Movement Infrastructure Sub-Frame
### 5.5.2 National Connectivity and Movement Infrastructure: National Spatial Development and Investment Priorities

#### Spatial Development and Investment Guidance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Inter-Regional and National Development Corridors (Road and Rail) (see Figure 44)</th>
<th>Maintain and Strengthen Existing National Development Corridors:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Adequately plan for and enable trade with SADC, which includes (1) a focus on SADC corridors, and (2) improving cost and efficiency at border and port facilities to handle greater international and regional trade flows.</td>
<td>• The N4-Maputo Corridor between Gauteng and Maputo;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Ensure that all the roads in the core national network are appropriately surfaced and the key routes prioritised for regular maintenance.</td>
<td>• The N4-west, leading to the Trans Kalahari-corridor, and passing through Botswana and Namibia to the port of Walvis Bay;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Logistics hubs, ports (airports and harbours) and border posts are maintained and expanded, as and where necessary, to keep pace with national economic growth and reduce delays at ports.</td>
<td>• The National routes in South Africa from Gauteng to the Durban port (N3);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The N1 north from Gauteng to Musina and the Beitbridge border into Zimbabwe;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The N1 south from Gauteng to Cape Town; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The N2 Coastal Corridor.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Support Development in Stressed Regions:

- The N2 from Nelson-Mandela Bay, via Mthatha to Port Shepstone; and
- The N2 from Richards Bay to Pongola.

#### Create New:

- From Mbombela to Makhado and Polokwane.

### Inter-Regional and National Freight Corridors (Road and Rail) (see Figure 44)

- Investment in rail is prioritised over road for economic, ecological and efficiency reasons.
- Rail infrastructure is rehabilitated and expanded to support national freight movement and trade with SADC.

#### Maintain and Strengthen Existing National Development Corridors:

- Existing national and inter-regional freight and development corridors along significant export and import trade routes, from Gauteng (1) via the N4 to Komatipoort; (2) via the N3 to eThekwini, and (3) via the N1 north to Musina.
**Spatial Development and Investment Guidance**

**Access Roads to Service Towns and Hinterland (Rural to Rural)** (see Figure 44)

- Improve rural-urban and rural-rural connections to support rural development, innovation and enterprise development through infrastructure investment, access to services, rural logistics, market gateways and economic agglomeration.

**National Spatial Development Priorities**

**Existing Connections to be Strengthened and Maintained:**

- Maintain existing connectivity between urban regions, cities, new cities, regional development anchors, and resource production areas in the sparsely populated west, and the well-connected southern and central parts of the country; and
- Maintain access roads and strategic infrastructure to ensure resilience of regional development anchors and rural service centres in areas where increased temperature and increased flooding, due to climate change, are predicted to impact negatively on infrastructure networks.

**Create New and Transform:**

- Improve rural-rural connectivity in National Transformation Corridors, and specifically so in the National Eco-Production Regions in the eastern and northern parts of the country.
5.5.3 National Action and Key Role-Players

The maintenance, expansion and upgrading of the country’s national transport and communications network will require coordination and collaboration by a variety of role-players, notably the NDoT, the DMR, the DoE, the DWS, the NPC, the PICC, ESKOM, SANRAL, PRASA, provincial sector departments responsible for long term infrastructure planning and development, municipalities, mining companies, organised labour and community representatives. The huge costs involved in such maintenance, expansion and upgrading, and the many other pressing development needs may lead to it being neglected. Ways in which timeous planning, budgeting and investment can be secured are as follows:

- Preparing a long-term national infrastructure plan that is aligned with the NSDF, (1) using the appropriate scenario development modelling techniques, (2) with involvement of a wide range of role-players and interest groups, including communities, and (3) introducing a phased approach to spread the cost of time;
- Creating a broad-based awareness of national and supra-national interdependencies and the need for investing in the network;
- Building the necessary capacities amongst the key role-players;
- Introducing a coordinating and monitoring institution, and providing regular updates as to the state of the network; and
- Using the NSDF’s envisaged ‘national spatial accountability system’ to monitor the contribution of key role-players in the maintenance, expansion and upgrading of the network in accordance with the national plan.
5.6 NSDF Sub-Frame 4: National Ecological Infrastructure and Natural Resource Base

5.6.1 Spatial Development and Investment Guidance

Spatial development and investment directives and identified national spatial development priorities to develop the envisaged national ecological infrastructure and natural resource base network (see Figure 45) are outlined below.

Protecting the national ecological infrastructure and natural resource base: This ‘base’ provides a natural resource foundation that enables all human life and activities in the country, and must, as such, be wisely used, managed and protected. It includes areas regarded as strategic assets within the country’s national and international biodiversity, ecology and tourism areas (including Ramsar Sites and Transfrontier Parks). The protection of this base requires that:

• National spatial development is well-planned and well-managed to (1) limit negative impacts on the ecological infrastructure base, (2) ensure that urban growth and land use fits within national and regional water resource availability profiles, and (3) ensure that land and/or settlement development does not threaten or compromise strategic surface and groundwater water production areas (see Annexure B);
• National water use is curbed through effective water demand management, recycling, infrastructure maintenance and water augmentation projects; and

• The strategic national water resource infrastructure system is well-maintained and the restoration of degraded water areas is prioritised.
Figure 45: National Ecological Infrastructure and Natural Resource Base Sub-Frame
5.6.2 National Ecological Infrastructure and Natural Resource Base: National Spatial Development and Investment Priorities

Spatial Development and Investment Guidance:

**National Protected Areas** (see Figure 45)
- Protect national ecological resources and national heritage areas.
- National spatial development is well-planned and well-managed to enable protection, as well as the effective use and beneficiation of national protected areas in accordance with the relevant regulations.

National Spatial Development Priorities

- **Maintain and Strengthen the Full Range of Priority Protected Areas:**
  - Transfrontier Parks;
  - Major National and Provincial Parks;
  - National Fresh Water Protection Areas; and
  - Marine Protected Areas.

- **Support Development in Stressed Regions:**
  - The N2 from Nelson-Mandela Bay via Mthatha to Port Shepstone; and
  - The N2 from Richards Bay to Pongola.

- **Create New and Transform:**
  - The ecologically-sensitive area from Mbombela to Makhado and Polokwane.
Spatial Development and Investment Guidance:

National Ecological and Biodiversity Management Areas (see Figure 45)

- Critical Biodiversity Areas (CBAs) and Strategic Water Source Areas (SWSAs) have been identified as Priority National Ecological Infrastructure Regions that are of national importance and development.
- Management, productive use and restoration of these areas (1) is a joint responsibility, and (2) could also be used for the socio-economic benefit of people, cities and economies in the regions in which they are located.
- Land-uses that reduce run-off or stream flow, or affect water-quality (e.g. mining, plantations, crop production and overgrazing) should be avoided in SWSAs, wetlands should be kept in good condition or rehabilitated, and invasive alien plants should be cleared. To support this:
  - The natural resource foundation and bio-diversity must be conserved in these areas of national and international significance; and
  - CBAs should remain in natural or near-natural ecological condition, i.e. no intensive land uses should take place in these areas (see Annexure 8).
- ‘Developmental co-benefits’ must be created through effective management and use of strategic ecological and biodiversity management areas, to support rural livelihoods, especially with regards to custodianship and tourism opportunities.

National Spatial Development Priorities

Maintain and Strengthen the Full Range of Priority Protected Areas:
- Manage and protect national protected areas; and
- Manage the use and restoration of relevant water-bodies and water production areas.

Support Stressed Areas:
- Effective land development management and productive development of CBAs and SWSAs in Eco-Urban Resource Production and Livelihood Regions (i.e. densely-settled smallholder farming and livelihood regions);
- Strategic Ground and Surface Water Production Areas have been identified, but must still be formally delineated and proclaimed;
- SWSAs need to be effectively restored, used and managed to support enterprise and livelihood opportunities and eco-industrial activities; and
- Existing and new economic activities must adhere to national development and management guidelines that have been (and are being) developed.

Create New and Transform:
- Effective land-use management and productive development of CBAs and SWSAs in dense clusters of urban, agricultural, industrial and mining areas in the Central Heartland area; and
- Effective management of SWSAs in Agri-Arid Regions (i.e. Groundwater Production Areas)
National Water Reticulation and Resource Infrastructure (see Figure 45)

- Maintenance, extension and upgrading of the strategic water resource infrastructure network (including dams, reservoirs and transfer pipelines) is prioritised to support nationally significant spatial development areas (see Annexure B).
- Water pipelines must be maintained and extended to key urban cores, anchor towns and geospecific production sites in line with national priorities.

Maintain and Strengthen the Full Range of Priority Protected Areas:
- Urban regions;
- Urban nodes;
- Regional Development Anchors; and
- Rural Service Centres.

Support Stressed Areas:
- Maintenance of water-transfer infrastructure that supports crucial national urban concentrations, nodes and development corridors; and
- Management of settlement growth in areas that are arid and increasingly under pressure in terms of water-availability, which may even include restrictions on further growth should water-availability not improve.
5.6.3 National Action and Key Role-Players

Regulatory implementation with regards to SWSAs is imperative. While guidelines for the management of development in such areas have been prepared, further actions have to be taken to see them implemented, i.e. (1) an intergovernmental team led by DEA and SANBI has to be put together, (2) awareness of the guidelines must be raised, and (3) the guidelines must be finalised and promulgated. In the interim, awareness of these guidelines can and needs to be raised, specifically with regards to:

- Activities such as (1) agriculture, (2) mining, (3) land and settlement development, (4) infrastructure investment, and (5) spatial planning and land use management in areas experiencing significant development pressures, such as the three National Transformation Corridors; and
- Category 1 of the CBAs, and the implications of this ‘CBA-status’ for land development and land use management in such areas.

With regards to ‘national spatial accountability’ for the protection of environmental quality in (1) SWSAs, (2) CBAs: Category 1, and (3) National Fresh Water Protection Areas, provinces responsible for the management of these areas, and their upstream impacts, will have to account for their actions. In addition to this, provincial and municipal SDFs must ensure that development in such key ecological areas is (1) not to their detriment, and (2) enhances their ability to provide their crucial life-enabling and ecological support services. The capacity, monitoring and support-implications of these roles and duties are significant, and will need to be jointly attended to by the national sector departments responsible for environmental affairs and spatial planning.
5.7 National Spatial Action Areas

5.7.1 Introduction

Following on from the directive in the NDP, the NSDF identifies areas of significant national risk and potential. In sharp contrast to the centrifugal forces (i.e. ‘outward-pushing forces away from the core’) that shaped Apartheid national spatial development planning, the NSDF provides a development perspective aimed at ‘drawing all South Africans closer to the core’:

- Nationally, in the form of a shared and smaller, yet more viable, more sustainable and more resilient national spatial footprint that places less pressure on our core national natural resource areas and ecological systems, and is more affordable to service and sustain;
- Regionally, in functionally integrated areas focused on regional development and wellbeing that (1) are supported by regional development collaboration agreements between of State and non-State actors, and (2) provide an interface between ‘the national and ‘the local; and
- Locally, in high-quality, serviced, compact, diverse and connected places with viable, robust and resilient economies.

In order to create such a ‘shared, smaller, better connected and more sustainable South Africa’, the NSDF identifies the most urgent short-term, strategic spatial development catalysts to (1) bring about radical spatial transformation at scale, (2) manage and mitigate rising national risks, and (3) move our country at speed towards the Ideal National Spatial Development Pattern (see Figure 46). These are called National Spatial Action Areas (NSAAs) (see Figure 47)

Concerted, focused and sustained intergovernmental collaboration is required in these NSAAs (see Table X) in the short term to:

- Target national spatial development actions and interventions; and
- Kickstart the process of aligning plans, budgets and departmental plans in and between spheres of government around national spatial development priorities.

The selection of the five types of NSAAs was informed by:

- The challenges and trends that are most likely to impact our country over the course of the (1) immediate, and (2) medium and longer-term futures;
- The stated development objectives in national and provincial development and sector plans; and
- The gap between our national spatial development vision and the status quo.

The identification of the NSAAs does not propose an overhaul or detailed spatial alignment of every existing planning instrument or initiative. Instead the introduction of these priority areas seeks to impact government processes by:

- Identifying (1) urgently required interventions in national space and (2) priority spatial development enablers for accelerated development impact in this space; and
- Restoring and managing the sustainable utilization of our country’s rich natural resource foundation and ecological infrastructure.

In the following sections, the NSAAs are briefly outlined, a few key statistics for each of the provided, and key action areas and role-players identified. (The statistics were generated by use of the national Mesozone data setxvi, with the exception of the population growth scenarios for 2030 and 2050, for which the Green Bookxvii was used.)
Table 1: An Overview of the Actions required in the National Spatial Action Areas in accordance with the four Sub-Frames

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>National Strategic Action Areas</th>
<th>NSDF Sub-Frames</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>National Transformation Corridors</strong></td>
<td>• Consolidating development in fully-fledged and transformed national urban nodes&lt;br&gt;• Supporting and strengthening regional development anchors to play their crucial (1) national connecting, and (2) regional development anchoring and enhancing roles&lt;br&gt;• Ensuring the sustainable use of resources, and preventing pollution and resource depletion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Central Innovation Belt</strong></td>
<td>• Diversifying the economy and supporting its transition to the secondary and tertiary sectors&lt;br&gt;• Creating transformed, well-functioning settlements&lt;br&gt;• Strengthening the network and nodes on it to become national centres of economic and human resource development and innovation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>National Resource Risk Areas</strong></td>
<td>• Ensuring the sustainable use of resources, and preventing pollution and resource depletion&lt;br&gt;• Managing competing and incompatible land uses, e.g. mining, agriculture and eco-tourism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>National Urban Regions</strong></td>
<td>• Strengthening the network and nodes on it to become national centres of economic and human resource development and innovation&lt;br&gt;• Managing national and cross-border interdependencies for national and wider SADC benefit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Arid-Innovation Region</strong></td>
<td>• Strengthening regional development anchors as connecting, catalytic and interface points&lt;br&gt;• Supporting intensive, high-value productive agriculture&lt;br&gt;• Strengthening and expanding alternative energy generation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Figure 46: From Ideal National Spatial Development Pattern to National Spatial Action Areas**

**Vision, Spatial Logic and Spatial Levers**

**National Spatial Outcomes**

1. **National Spatial Outcome 1:** A network of national urban nodes, regional development anchors, and development corridors that enable South Africa to derive maximum benefit from urbanisation and urban life.
2. **National Spatial Outcome 2:** National corridors enable sustainable and transformative national development, urbanisation, urban consolidation, mutually beneficial urban and rural linkages, and ecological management.
3. **National Spatial Outcome 3:** National connectivity and movement infrastructure systems are strategically located, extended and maintained, to support an inclusive space economy and key national and regional gateways.
4. **National Spatial Outcome 4:** Productive Rural Regions, supported through sustainable resource economies and regional development anchors, enhance resilience in rural areas, to enable access to the dividends of urban consolidation, rural innovation and climate adaptation.
5. **National Spatial Outcome 5:** National ecological infrastructure and the national natural resource foundation is well protected and managed, to enable sustainable and just access to water and other natural resources, both for current and future generations.

**Towards a Transformed Future South Africa - Long Term Guidance**

**NSDF Sub-Frames**

- NSDF Sub-Frame 1: National Urban Network
- NSDF Sub-Frame 2: National Resource Production Regions
- NSDF Sub-Frame 3: National Connecting and Movement Infrastructure
- NSDF Sub-Frame 4: National Ecological Infrastructure and National Resource Base

**Call to Action - Targeted Intervention**

- National Spatial Action Areas
- National Transformation Corridors
- Central Innovation Belt
- National Resource Risk Areas
- National Urban Regions
- Anti-Innovation Region
Figure 47: National Spatial Action Areas

- National Transformation Corridors: (1) Coastal Transformation Corridor; (2) Escarpment Transformation Corridor; and (3) Northwestern Transformation Corridor
- Central Innovation Belt: Emalahleni – Siyabuswa – Rustenburg – City of Matsosana - Sasolburg
- National Resource Risk Area: (1) Upper Vaal, (2) Olifants, (3) Waterberg, (4) uMgeni, and (5) Berg and Breede
- National Urban Regions
- Arid Innovation Region
5.7.2 NSAA 1: National Transformation Corridors

Figure 48: National Transformation Corridors Overview
5.7.2.1 Significance of the National Transformation Corridors as NSAAs

While these three corridors each have their own unique contexts and challenges, they share many similarities: They all have (1) large, youthful populations, (2) shared histories of deep deprivation and neglect as former Apartheid Bantustans, (3) high levels of poverty and unemployment, and (4) dense and sprawling rural settlement forms. They are also areas of high ecological value to the country as (1) surface water producers in the case of the National Coastal Transformation Corridor and the Eastern Escarpment Transformation Corridor, and (2) an enormous source of groundwater, in the case of the Northwestern Transformation Corridor. In addition to this, the National Coastal Transformation Corridor and the Eastern Escarpment Transformation Corridor include large portions of the country’s very limited high-value agricultural land, and as such are key to the long-term food security of the country. The Northwestern Transformation Corridor, in turn, includes crucial cattle and irrigation farming activities.

In terms of climate change predictions, the National Coastal Transformation Corridor and the Eastern Escarpment Transformation Corridor, will also be called upon to provide (1) water and food, (2) key ecosystems services, and (3) a place to call home for a large number of South Africans, due to the relatively more favourable climatic conditions in these parts of the country vis-à-vis far less favourable conditions envisaged in the western, north-western and central parts of the country. In the case of the Northwestern Transformation Corridor, the area in which it is located is set to experiences very harsh climatic conditions in the not-too-distant future, but (1) due to intensive irrigation, farming has become established as a regionally and nationally important economic activity, and (2) mining has become an earner of foreign exchange for the country.

Given their shared histories, similar challenges, and importance for the future of the country, declaring these areas as NSAAs is crucial, (1) for the sake of historical redress, (2) for attending to pressing rural spatial, social and economic development challenges at scale, (3) for national food and water security, and (4) for realising our desired future Ideal National Spatial Development Pattern. Failure to turn the tide on the challenges these NSAAs face, and ensuring sustainable (1) service delivery, and (2) regional economic development, would not only be to the detriment of these areas and the people who live in them, but also to the country as a whole, due to significant national regional interdependencies.

5.7.2.2 Focus of Actions and Interventions

Guided by the Ideal National Spatial Development Patterns and the NSDF Sub-Frames, the following national priorities require strategic spatial action to (1) bring about transformation in the national spatial pattern, (2) enable national and regional-scale climate and developmental adaptation, and (3) achieve developmental impact at scale:

- Extend and improve the transportation networks, ensure regular maintenance and upgrading of existing infrastructure, notably roads, increase investment in high-speed ICT infrastructure and enhance urban-rural and rural-rural connectivity;
- Develop a network of (1) strong and vibrant existing and emerging cities and large towns to fulfil the role of fully-fledged national urban nodes, (2) viable regional development anchors, and (3) well-capacitated rural service centres;
- Ensure effective city and town management to prevent sprawl, ensure innovative settlement planning and urban land reform, well-managed land-use, enabling infrastructure investment;
- Introduce rural design, urban/rural edges, land administration and urban land reform, to consolidate place-specific urbanisation in
dense rural settlements within a strategically located network of regional development anchors, rural service centres and small towns;

- Provide catalytic, innovative and contextually-suitable sustainable infrastructure, social and basic services to support enterprise development, well-being and inclusive growth with both an ecological and human-focussed approach;

- Prioritise human capital and people-centred enterprise development, e.g. arts and culture, tourism, knowledge creation, education and innovation;

- Optimise the agricultural opportunities in the region and support the establishment of small-scale farming activities, agri-enterprises and agri-led industrialisation, to foster productive rural regions, enhance national food security, and strengthen national water security;

- Develop the tourism sector and creative industries in the region, with an emphasis on small-and-medium-sized farming activities, and agri-eco production;

- Ensure the protection and management of ecological infrastructure and national resources and protected areas, including SWSAs and high-value agricultural land; and

- Establish strong regional growth and development compacts, including all role-players, i.e. the three spheres of government, traditional leaders, communities (notably youth), the private sector, CBOs, NGOs and organised labour, and ensure regional, cross-provincial and cross-municipal boundary collaborative spatial development planning and governance.

In the following figures (Figures 49 to 51) and tables (Tables 2 to 7), (1) a spatial image of each of the three National Transformation Corridors, (2) a summary of the key statistics regarding each of the corridors, (3) the names of the affected municipalities in each of the corridors, and (4) the names of the key settlements in each of the corridors is provided.
Table 2: Coastal Transformation Corridor population and economy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CATEGORY</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
<th>% OF NATIONAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Population 2016</td>
<td>5 144 905</td>
<td>9.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Youth (under 35)</td>
<td>3 381 782</td>
<td>9.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population 2030 (medium growth)</td>
<td>6 300 850</td>
<td>9.7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population 2050 (medium growth)</td>
<td>7 273 761</td>
<td>9.7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total GVA 2016 (R mil)</td>
<td>174 770.12</td>
<td>6.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unemployed 2016</td>
<td>495 284</td>
<td>8.7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor Households 2011</td>
<td>296 524</td>
<td>10.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Productive land: +/- 42 000 km² = 6.5% of national productive land</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 3: Coastal Transformation Corridor affected municipalities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROVINCE</th>
<th>LOCAL MUNICIPALITY</th>
<th>DISTRICT/METROPOLITAN MUNICIPALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EC</td>
<td>Mbizana</td>
<td>Alfred Nzo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EC</td>
<td>Ntabankulu</td>
<td>Alfred Nzo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EC</td>
<td>Umzimvubu</td>
<td>Alfred Nzo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EC</td>
<td>Great Kei</td>
<td>Amathole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EC</td>
<td>Mbhashe</td>
<td>Amathole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EC</td>
<td>Mnquma</td>
<td>Amathole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EC</td>
<td>Ngqushwa</td>
<td>Amathole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EC</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Buffalo City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EC</td>
<td>Makana</td>
<td>Cacadu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EC</td>
<td>Ndlambe</td>
<td>Cacadu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EC</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Nelson Mandela Bay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EC</td>
<td>King Sabata Dalindyebo</td>
<td>OR Tambo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EC</td>
<td>Mhlontlo</td>
<td>OR Tambo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EC</td>
<td>Ngquza Hill</td>
<td>OR Tambo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EC</td>
<td>Nyandeni</td>
<td>OR Tambo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EC</td>
<td>Port St Johns</td>
<td>OR Tambo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KZN</td>
<td>Greater Kokstad</td>
<td>Sisonke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KZN</td>
<td>Ray Nkonyeni</td>
<td>Ugu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KZN</td>
<td>uMuziwabantu</td>
<td>Ugu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

National Urban Network Elements:

- **Urban Cores**: Nelson Mandela Bay, Buffalo City and Mthatha as new emerging city;
- **Regional Development Anchors**: Grahamstown, Butterworth, Lusikisiki, Kokstad, Port Shepstone-Margate; and
Figure 50: The Eastern Escarpment Transformation Corridor Close-Up

Table 4: Eastern Escarpment Transformation Corridor population and economy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CATEGORY</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
<th>% OF NATIONAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Population 2016</td>
<td>5,693,132</td>
<td>10.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Youth (under 35)</td>
<td>3,897,376</td>
<td>10.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population 2030 (medium growth)</td>
<td>6,514,770</td>
<td>10.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population 2050 (medium growth)</td>
<td>7,036,132</td>
<td>9.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total GVA 2016 (R mil)</td>
<td>177,240.17</td>
<td>6.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unemployed 2016</td>
<td>592,768</td>
<td>10.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor Households 2011</td>
<td>316,163</td>
<td>10.7%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Productive land: +/- 50,000 km² = 7.7% of national productive land

National Urban Network Elements:

- **Urban Core**: Mombela, Polokwane and Tzaneen;
- **Regional Development Anchors**: Barberton, Burgersfort, Bushbuckridge, Giyani, Lydenburg, Makhado, Musina, Phalaborwa and Thohoyandou; and

Table 5: Eastern Escarpment Transformation Zone affected municipalities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROVINCE</th>
<th>LOCAL MUNICIPALITY</th>
<th>DISTRICT/METROPOLITAN MUNICIPALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LIM</td>
<td>Molemole</td>
<td>Capricorn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIM</td>
<td>Polokwane</td>
<td>Capricorn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIM</td>
<td>Greater Giyani</td>
<td>Mopani (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROVINCE</td>
<td>LOCAL MUNICIPALITY</td>
<td>DISTRICT/METROPOLITAN MUNICIPALITY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIM</td>
<td>Greater Letaba</td>
<td>Mopani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIM</td>
<td>Greater Tzaneen</td>
<td>Mopani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIM</td>
<td>Ba-Phalaborwa</td>
<td>Mopani (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIM</td>
<td>Maruleng</td>
<td>Mopani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIM</td>
<td>Greater Tubatse/Fetakgomo</td>
<td>Sekhukhune</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIM</td>
<td>Musina</td>
<td>Vhembe (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIM</td>
<td>Thulamela</td>
<td>Vhembe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIM</td>
<td>Makhado</td>
<td>Vhembe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIM</td>
<td>Collins Chabane</td>
<td>Vhembe (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Thaba Chweu</td>
<td>Ehlanzeni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Nkomazi</td>
<td>Ehlanzeni (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Bushbuckridge</td>
<td>Ehlanzeni (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Mbombela</td>
<td>Ehlanzeni (part of)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 51: Arid Innovation Transformation Corridor Close-Up
Table 6: Northwestern Transformation Corridor and economy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CATEGORY</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
<th>% OF NATIONAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Population 2016</td>
<td>1 612 544</td>
<td>2.89%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Youth (under 35)</td>
<td>1 057 572</td>
<td>2.94%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population 2030 (medium growth)</td>
<td>1 833 925</td>
<td>2.81%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population 2050 (medium growth)</td>
<td>1 961 518</td>
<td>2.61%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total GVA 2016 (R mil)</td>
<td>61 684.23</td>
<td>2.30%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unemployed 2016</td>
<td>153 847</td>
<td>2.69%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor Households 2011</td>
<td>87 300</td>
<td>2.94%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Productive land: +/- 58 100km² = 8.9% of national productive land</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

National Urban Network Elements:

- **Urban Core**: Sol Plaatje;
- **Regional Development Anchors**: Kuruman, Mahikeng and Vryburg; and
- **Rural Service Centers**: Barkly West, Bloemhof, Christiana, Delareyville, Hartswater, Jan Kempdorp, Kathu, Madibogo, Majeakgoro, Ottosdal, Pampierstad, Postmasburg, Ritchie, Schweizer-Reneke, Stella, Taung, Warrenton and Olifantshoek.

Table 7: Northwestern Transformation Zone Affected Municipalities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROVINCE</th>
<th>LOCAL MUNICIPALITY</th>
<th>DISTRICT/METROPOLITAN MUNICIPALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Dikgatlong</td>
<td>Frances Baard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Magareng</td>
<td>Frances Baard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Sol Plaatje</td>
<td>Frances Baard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Gamagara</td>
<td>John Taolo Gaetsewe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Ga-Segonyana</td>
<td>John Taolo Gaetsewe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Joe Morolong</td>
<td>John Taolo Gaetsewe (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Kgatelopele</td>
<td>Z F Mgcawu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Tsantsabane</td>
<td>Z F Mgcawu (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NW</td>
<td>Greater Taung</td>
<td>Dr Ruth Segomotsi Mompati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NW</td>
<td>Lekwa-Teemane</td>
<td>Dr Ruth Segomotsi Mompati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NW</td>
<td>Mamusa</td>
<td>Dr Ruth Segomotsi Mompati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NW</td>
<td>Naledi</td>
<td>Dr Ruth Segomotsi Mompati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NW</td>
<td>Mafikeng</td>
<td>Ngaka Modiri Molema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NW</td>
<td>Ratlou</td>
<td>Ngaka Modiri Molema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NW</td>
<td>Tswaing</td>
<td>Ngaka Modiri Molema</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.7.3  NSAA 2: Central Innovation Belt

*Figure 52: Central Innovation Belt Overview*
5.7.3.1 Significance of the Central Innovation Belt as NSAA

The area around the core of the Gauteng urban region, i.e. the ‘Central Innovation Belt’, is spatially positioned to become an economically strong, diverse production area that forms an integral part of the core economic driver of the country and sub-continent. It is already a significant contributor to national economic growth and employment and a crucial surface water production area, i.e. the Vaal Catchment.

The Central Innovation Belt is characterised by:

- A long history of high-value mining and industrial production that is, and has been, experiencing significant shrinkage and job losses in some parts, with more very likely to come, which is primarily due to changes in the demand for resource-based commodities and the costs of resource extraction;
- Intensive agriculture and related agro-enterprises, as well as tourism activities that are not necessarily at odds, but also not enhanced by the mining and industrial activities in the same area;
- Sustained strong natural population growth and in-migration, much of it driven by the prospect of employment in the mining and industrial sectors;
- High levels of regional economic and socio-economic vulnerability, due to the economic decline and job losses and uncertainties about the future of especially mining in the area; and
- Pressures on natural resources, notably productive agricultural land and surface water production by population growth, urban sprawl and pollution.

The eastern part of the region intersects with another NSAA, i.e. the Olifants River Catchment in Mpumalanga, which is a National Resource Risk area in Mpumalanga, where similar changes in the mining and energy-generation sectors, as well as competition for land and water for food production require a transition in the regional economy and mitigation of environmental risk factors. In the Vaal Catchment area, which covers the southern portion of the region, severe challenges around contamination have been, and are being experienced.

5.7.3.2 Focus of Actions and Interventions

Guided by the Ideal National Spatial Development Patterns and the NSDF Sub-Frames, the following proposals are made:

- Support large-scale regional economic and employment change in the region through innovation, diversification, adaptation and the repurposing of existing industrial land and associated infrastructure;
- Expedite urban and rural land reform, consolidate existing small-and-medium-scale agriculture support programmes, protect and optimise high-value agricultural land, and strengthen the focus on job-intensive agro-processing in the area;
- Introduce a special collaborative programme in government (including DMR, DTI, CoGTA, DRDLR, DPME, NT, provincial sector department and municipalities) with a specific focus on ensuring (1) innovation and economic diversification, and (2) quality human settlement development in the region, and involve universities, research councils, the private sector, communities and organised labour in this urgent initiative; and
- Establish a joint public-private action group to manage the threat to nationally and regionally important water and productive land resources, with the priority being on the impact of formal and informal urban sprawl, acid mine water, the maintenance of productive agriculture, especially for small scale farmers close to urban centres, and the rehabilitation and management of the Vaal system.

In the following figure (Figure 53) and tables (Tables 8 to 9), (1) a spatial image of the Central Innovation Belt region, (2) a summary of key
statistics regarding region, (3) the names of the affected municipalities in the region, and (4) the names of the key settlements in the region are provided.

Figure 53: Central Innovation Belt Close-Up

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CATEGORY</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
<th>% OF NATIONAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Population 2016</td>
<td>4 630 286</td>
<td>8.3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Youth (under 35)</td>
<td>2 909 184</td>
<td>8.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population 2030 (medium growth)</td>
<td>5 746 604</td>
<td>8.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population 2050 (medium growth)</td>
<td>6 904 972</td>
<td>9.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total GVA 2016 (R Mil)</td>
<td>283 504</td>
<td>10.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unemployed 2016</td>
<td>538 925</td>
<td>9.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor Households 2011</td>
<td>270 064</td>
<td>9.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Productive land: +/- 50 000 km²</td>
<td>= 7.7% of national productive land</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

National Urban Network Elements:

- **Urban Core**: Klerksdorp, Rustenburg and Witbank;
- **Regional Development Anchors**: Bela Bela, Bethal, Brits, Potchefstroom, Secunda, Siyabusa-Dennilton; and
Table 9: Central Innovation Belt affected municipalities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROVINCE</th>
<th>LOCAL MUNICIPALITY</th>
<th>DISTRICT/METROPOLITAN MUNICIPALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FS</td>
<td>Metsimaholo</td>
<td>Fezile Dabi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FS</td>
<td>Ngwathe</td>
<td>Fezile Dabi (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FS</td>
<td>Moqhaka</td>
<td>Fezile Dabi (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FS</td>
<td>Mafube</td>
<td>Fezile Dabi (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GT</td>
<td>Emfuleni</td>
<td>Sedibeng (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GT</td>
<td>Midvaal</td>
<td>Sedibeng (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIM</td>
<td>Bela-Bela</td>
<td>Waterberg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Govan Mbeki</td>
<td>Gert Sibande</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Dipaleseng</td>
<td>Gert Sibande</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Emalahleni</td>
<td>Nkangala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Steve Tshwete</td>
<td>Nkangala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Victor Khanye</td>
<td>Nkangala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Dr JS Moroka</td>
<td>Nkangala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Thembisile</td>
<td>Nkangala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NW</td>
<td>Rustenburg</td>
<td>Bojanala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NW</td>
<td>Kgetsiengriver</td>
<td>Bojanala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NW</td>
<td>Moses Kotane</td>
<td>Bojanala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NW</td>
<td>Madibeng</td>
<td>Bojanala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NW</td>
<td>Moretele</td>
<td>Bojanala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NW</td>
<td>City of Matlosana</td>
<td>Dr Kenneth Kaunda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NW</td>
<td>Ventersdorp/Tlokwe</td>
<td>Dr Kenneth Kaunda</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.7.4 NSAA 3: National Resource Risk Areas

Figure 54: National Resource Risk Areas Overview

National Resource Risk Area: (1) Nkangala, (2) Olifants, (3) Waterberg, (4) Umgeni, (5) Berg, and (6) Breede River Catchments
5.7.4.1 Significance of the National Resource Risk Areas as NSAA

These are areas that are of national importance to the economy of the country and the lives of its people. They are under severe stress from an ecological perspective, while also being ‘resource critical regions’ for other economic sectors, such as mining, agriculture and human settlement. Water is not only a vital resource in the mining activities that drive the energy sector, but also crucial for (1) the strong agricultural sector in these areas, and for (2) energy-generation at coal fired power plants, i.e. the Olifants, Upper Vaal and Waterberg catchment areas. Keeping these economies going, and expanding them further, as is currently happening in a number of these catchment areas, (1) poses a serious risk to the quantity and quality of the water supplied by these areas to the country as a whole, and (2) presents the country with a serious conundrum and set of trade-offs. At the moment, however, the trade-offs between water, food and energy security in these areas (and the knock-on effects in other places) are playing out in a largely ad hoc way. It is, however, not due to lack of awareness and concern, as numerous plans refer to the challenge. The problem is that not much has been done to date, with urgent engagement being required with regards to the following trade-offs:

- **Upper Vaal region (Mpumalanga):** Coal mining, energy generation SWSAs and high-potential agricultural land;
- **Greater uMgeni region (KwaZulu-Natal):** Water supply for eThekwini, intensive agriculture and expanding settlements;
- **Waterberg region (Limpopo):** Mining, water, energy generation and future expansion of the area driven as a national priority;
- **Olifants Water Management Area (Mpumalanga and Limpopo):** Irrigation schemes, major water quality issues, and pressure from mining activities and energy generation; and
- **Berg and Breede River Catchments (Western Cape):** High-production agriculture, food security and water supply for the Cape Town urban region.

5.7.4.2 Focus of Actions and Interventions

Guided by the Ideal National Spatial Development Patterns and the NSDF Sub-Frames, the following proposals are made:

- Attend, as a matter of urgency, to areas were land-use and water competition and pollution are (1) causing severe risks to stressed catchments in fulfilling their roles, and (2) placing downstream dependent regions at risk;
- Rehabilitate degraded and/or contaminated areas to play their crucial roles in national (1) food production, and (2) surface and ground water production and supply;
- Plan and prepare for climate change, not only in the areas themselves, but also for the knock-on effects of climate change in other parts of the country and in neighbouring countries;
- Attend to capacity and resource-constraints at provincial, regional and local levels, with national sector departments responsible for environmental affairs and spatial planning playing a key role in this regard;
- Avoid approving applications and proposals for land-uses that reduce stream flow or affect water quality (e.g. mining operations and huge plantations) in SWSAs;
- Keep wetlands in good condition, rehabilitate ones in need of it, and clear invasive alien plants form these areas;
- Restore, manage and wisely use CBAs and SWSAs to support eco-enterprise activities and related livelihood opportunities;
- Prepare an integrated development and resource management plans with an explicitly (1) spatial approach and (2) a strategic national perspective, for each of these areas, possibly a Regional SDF; and
- Ensure coordinated State intervention in these areas, with provincial governments, in collaboration with the institution responsible for NSDF implementation, spearheading such action.

In the following figures (**Figures 55 to 59**) and tables (**Tables 10 to 21**), (1) a spatial image of each of the three National Resource Risk Areas, (2) a
summary of the key statistics regarding each of the areas, (3) the names of the affected municipalities in each of the areas, and (4) the names of the key settlements in each of the areas is provided.

Figure 55: Upper Vaal River Catchments Close-Up

Table 10: Upper Vaal River Catchment population and economy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CATEGORY</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
<th>% OF NATIONAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Population 2016</td>
<td>615 318</td>
<td>1.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Youth (under 35)</td>
<td>394 519</td>
<td>1.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population 2030 (medium growth)</td>
<td>765 551</td>
<td>1.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population 2050 (medium growth)</td>
<td>958 133</td>
<td>1.3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total GVA 2016 (R mil)</td>
<td>39 044.06</td>
<td>1.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unemployed 2016</td>
<td>64 987</td>
<td>1.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor Households 2011</td>
<td>29 391</td>
<td>1.0%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Productive land: +/- 19 500 km² = 3% of national productive land, and 97% of the entire extent of the catchment.

National Urban Network Elements:
- Regional Development Anchors: Standerton, Ermelo, Bethal and Secunda; and
- Rural Service Centres: Memel, Vrede, Villiers, Amersfoort and Morgenzon.

Table 11: Upper Vaal River Catchment affected municipalities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROVINCE</th>
<th>LOCAL MUNICIPALITY</th>
<th>DISTRICT/METROPOLITAN MUNICIPALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FS</td>
<td>Mafube</td>
<td>Fezile Dabi (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FS</td>
<td>Metsimaholo</td>
<td>Fezile Dabi (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FS</td>
<td>Phumelela</td>
<td>Thabo Mofutsanyane (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GT</td>
<td>Midvaal</td>
<td>Sedibeng (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KZN</td>
<td>Dannhauser</td>
<td>Amajuba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KZN</td>
<td>Newcastle</td>
<td>Amajuba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Dipaleseng</td>
<td>Gert Sibande (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROVINCE</td>
<td>LOCAL MUNICIPALITY</td>
<td>DISTRICT/METROPOLITAN MUNICIPALITY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Dr Pixley Ka Isaka Seme</td>
<td>Gert Sibande (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Govan Mbeki</td>
<td>Gert Sibande (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Lekwa</td>
<td>Gert Sibande</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Mkhondo</td>
<td>Gert Sibande</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Msukaligwa</td>
<td>Gert Sibande</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NW</td>
<td>City of Matsosana</td>
<td>Dr Kenneth Kaunda (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NW</td>
<td>Venterdorp/Tlokwe</td>
<td>Dr Kenneth Kaunda (part of)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 56: Olifants River Catchments Close-Up**

![Map of Olifants River Catchment](image)
Table 12: Olifants River Catchment population and economy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CATEGORY</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
<th>% OF NATIONAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Population 2016</td>
<td>3,520,066</td>
<td>6.3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Youth (under 35)</td>
<td>2,319,900</td>
<td>6.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population 2030 (medium growth)</td>
<td>4,259,832</td>
<td>6.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population 2050 (medium growth)</td>
<td>4,899,302</td>
<td>6.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total GVA 2016 (R mil)</td>
<td>154,213.09</td>
<td>5.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unemployed 2016</td>
<td>396,962</td>
<td>6.9%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor Households 2011</td>
<td>215,232</td>
<td>7.3%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Productive land: +/- 41 200km² = 6.3% of national productive land

National Urban Network Elements:

- **Urban Core**: Witbank, Gauteng Metropolitan Region, Tzaneen and Polokwane;
- **Regional Development Anchors**: Bethal, Secunda, Lydenburg, Groblersdal, Siyabuswa-Dennilton, Bela Bela, Burgersfort and Phalaborwa; and
- **Rural Service Centres**: Leandra, Kriel, Hendriena, Delmas, Ogies, Belfast, Dullstroom, Roossenekal, Sabie, Jane Furse, Acornhoek, Mafikeng, Magatle, Dipulane, Penge, Hoedspruit, Lebowakgomo, Bogalatladi, Lorraine and Ga-Mafefe.

Table 13: Olifants River Catchment affected municipalities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROVINCE</th>
<th>LOCAL MUNICIPALITY</th>
<th>DISTRICT/METROPOLITAN MUNICIPALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GT</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>City of Tshwane (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GT</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Ekurhuleni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GT</td>
<td>Leosedi</td>
<td>Sedibeng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIM</td>
<td>Lepele-Nkumpi</td>
<td>Capricorn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIM</td>
<td>Polokwane</td>
<td>Capricorn (part of)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROVINCE</th>
<th>LOCAL MUNICIPALITY</th>
<th>DISTRICT/METROPOLITAN MUNICIPALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LIM</td>
<td>Ba-Phalaborwa</td>
<td>Mopani (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIM</td>
<td>Greater Tzaneen</td>
<td>Mopani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIM</td>
<td>Maruleng</td>
<td>Mopani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIM</td>
<td>Elias Motsoaledi</td>
<td>Sekhukhune</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIM</td>
<td>Ephraim Mogale</td>
<td>Sekhukhune</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIM</td>
<td>Greater Tubatse/Fetakgomo</td>
<td>Sekhukhune</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIM</td>
<td>Makhuduthamaga</td>
<td>Sekhukhune</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIM</td>
<td>Bela-Bela</td>
<td>Waterberg (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIM</td>
<td>Modimolle/Mookgophong</td>
<td>Waterberg (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIM</td>
<td>Mogalakwena</td>
<td>Waterberg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Bushbuckridge</td>
<td>Ehlanzeni (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Thaba Chweu</td>
<td>Ehlanzeni (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Chief Albert Luthuli</td>
<td>Gert Sibande</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Govan Mbeki</td>
<td>Gert Sibande (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Msukaligwa</td>
<td>Gert Sibande (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Dr JS Moroka</td>
<td>Nkangala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Emakhazeni</td>
<td>Nkangala (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Emalahleni</td>
<td>Nkangala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Steve Tshwete</td>
<td>Nkangala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Thembisile</td>
<td>Nkangala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Victor Khanye</td>
<td>Nkangala</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

National Spatial Development Framework Draft 2019
Table 14: Waterberg River Catchment population and economy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CATEGORY</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
<th>% OF NATIONAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Population 2016</td>
<td>571 355</td>
<td>1.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Youth (under 35)</td>
<td>343 379</td>
<td>1.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population 2030 (medium growth)</td>
<td>672 377</td>
<td>1.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population 2050 (medium growth)</td>
<td>807 616</td>
<td>1.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total GVA 2016 (R mil)</td>
<td>26 473.40</td>
<td>1.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unemployed 2016</td>
<td>33 569</td>
<td>0.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor Households 2011</td>
<td>3 489</td>
<td>0.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Productive land: +/- 11 000km² = 1.7% of national productive land</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

National Urban Network Elements:
- Regional Development Anchor: Lephalale; and
- Rural Service Centre: Vaalwater.

Table 15: Waterberg River Catchment affected municipalities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROVINCE</th>
<th>LOCAL MUNICIPALITY</th>
<th>DISTRICT/METROPOLITAN MUNICIPALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LIM</td>
<td>Bela-Bela</td>
<td>Waterberg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIM</td>
<td>Lephalale</td>
<td>Waterberg (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIM</td>
<td>Modimolle/Mookgophong</td>
<td>Waterberg (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIM</td>
<td>Thabazimbi</td>
<td>Waterberg (part of)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Figure 58: uMngeni River Catchments Close-Up

Table 16: uMngeni River Catchment population and economy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CATEGORY</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
<th>% OF NATIONAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Population 2016</td>
<td>2,049,458</td>
<td>3.7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Youth (under 35)</td>
<td>1,317,793</td>
<td>3.7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population 2030 (medium growth)</td>
<td>2,547,224</td>
<td>3.9%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population 2050 (medium growth)</td>
<td>3,019,055</td>
<td>4.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total GVA 2016 (R mil)</td>
<td>99,553.24</td>
<td>3.7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unemployed 2016</td>
<td>237,634</td>
<td>4.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor Households 2011</td>
<td>144,415</td>
<td>4.9%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Productive land: +/- 4200km² = 0.66% of national productive land

National Urban Network Elements:
- Urban Region: eThekwini; and
- Rural Service Centres: GaKeta, Dalton.

Table 17: uMngeni River Catchment affected municipalities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROVINCE</th>
<th>LOCAL MUNICIPALITY</th>
<th>DISTRICT/METROPOLITAN MUNICIPALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>KZN</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>eThekwini (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KZN</td>
<td>Ndwedwe</td>
<td>iLembe (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KZN</td>
<td>Impendle</td>
<td>Umgungundlovu (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KZN</td>
<td>Mkambathini</td>
<td>Umgungundlovu (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KZN</td>
<td>Mpoiana</td>
<td>Umgungundlovu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KZN</td>
<td>Richmond</td>
<td>Umgungundlovu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KZN</td>
<td>The Msunduzi</td>
<td>Umgungundlovu (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KZN</td>
<td>uMngeni</td>
<td>Umgungundlovu (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KZN</td>
<td>uMshwathi</td>
<td>Umgungundlovu (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KZN</td>
<td>Umvoti</td>
<td>Umzinyathi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Figure 59: Berg & Breede River Catchments Close-Up**

![Map of Berg and Breede River catchments]

**Table 18: Berg River Catchment population and economy**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CATEGORY</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
<th>% OF NATIONAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Population 2016</td>
<td>2 049 458</td>
<td>1.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Youth (under 35)</td>
<td>1 317 793</td>
<td>1.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population 2030 (medium growth)</td>
<td>2 547 224</td>
<td>1.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population 2050 (medium growth)</td>
<td>3 019 055</td>
<td>1.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total GVA 2016 (R mil)</td>
<td>99 553.24</td>
<td>1.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unemployed 2016</td>
<td>237 634</td>
<td>0.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor Households 2011</td>
<td>144 415</td>
<td>0.6%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Productive land: +/- 4 900km² = 0.8% of national productive land

**National Urban Network Elements:**

- **Urban Core:** Cape Town;
- **Regional Development Anchors:** Paarl – Wellington, Moorreesburg and Vredenburg; and
- **Rural Service Centres:** Darling, Riebeek-Wes, Piketberg, Wolseley, Ceres, Franschoek, Genadendal, Rivieronderend, Ashton, Montagu, Barrydale, Heidelberg and Riversdale.

**Table 19: Berg River Catchment affected municipalities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROVINCE</th>
<th>LOCAL MUNICIPALITY</th>
<th>DISTRICT/METROPOLITAN MUNICIPALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WC</td>
<td>Breede Valley</td>
<td>Cape Winelands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WC</td>
<td>Drakenstein</td>
<td>Cape Winelands (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WC</td>
<td>Stellenbosch</td>
<td>Cape Winelands (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WC</td>
<td>Witzenberg</td>
<td>Cape Winelands (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WC</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>City of Cape Town</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WC</td>
<td>Theewaterskloof</td>
<td>Overberg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 20: Breede River Catchment population and economy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CATEGORY</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
<th>% OF NATIONAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Population 2016</td>
<td>507,226</td>
<td>0.9%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Youth (under 35)</td>
<td>299,843</td>
<td>0.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population 2030 (medium growth)</td>
<td>534,316</td>
<td>0.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population 2050 (medium growth)</td>
<td>577,511</td>
<td>0.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total GVA 2016 (R mil)</td>
<td>22,249.21</td>
<td>0.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unemployed 2016</td>
<td>21,254</td>
<td>0.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor Households 2011</td>
<td>16,234</td>
<td>0.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Productive land: +/- 11 200 km² = 1.7% of national productive land</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

National Urban Network Elements:

- **Urban Core**: Cape Town;
- **Regional Development Anchors**: Swellendam and Worcester; and
- **Rural Service Centres**: Rivieronderend, Genadendal, Heidelberg, Riversdale, Franschoek, Barrydale, Ashton, Robertson, Montagu, Wolseley and Ceres.

Table 21: Breede River Catchment affected municipalities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROVINCE</th>
<th>LOCAL MUNICIPALITY</th>
<th>DISTRICT/METROPOLITAN MUNICIPALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WC</td>
<td>Breede Valley</td>
<td>Cape Winelands (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WC</td>
<td>Drakenstein</td>
<td>Cape Winelands (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WC</td>
<td>Langeberg</td>
<td>Cape Winelands (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WC</td>
<td>Stellenbosch</td>
<td>Cape Winelands (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WC</td>
<td>Witzenberg</td>
<td>Cape Winelands (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WC</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>City of Cape Town</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WC</td>
<td>Hessequa</td>
<td>Eden (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WC</td>
<td>Cape Agulhas</td>
<td>Overberg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WC</td>
<td>Swellendam</td>
<td>Overberg (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WC</td>
<td>Theewaterskloof</td>
<td>Overberg (part of)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.7.5 NSAA 4: National Urban Regions

Figure 60: National Urban Regions Overview
5.7.5.1 Significance of the National Urban Regions as NSAAs

More than half of the country’s population already live in urban regions and cities, with this trend set to continue well into the future. In addition to being ‘home’ to millions of our people, three main urban regions are also where:

- The bulk of the country’s economic activities, and those economic activities of highest value, are concentrated;
- The national transition to a high-value service-based economy will be driven and accomplished;
- Prospects for job creation through startups, small-scale activities and the arts, culture and entertainment industries are greatest;
- The youth dividend must be reaped; and
- The bulk of (1) imports and exports, and (2) tourists visiting the country, pass through.

As such, these spaces, small in size, but huge in terms of population, economic activity and opportunity, are fundamental to the future of the country. Powerful as they are, they are struggling to deal with the challenges of service provision, housing, unemployment, crime, environmental degradation, transport and infrastructure maintenance. In addition to this, they also still struggle with the legacy of spatial segregation and exclusion.

Due to their economic and social significance, these regions face not only natural population growth but also in-migration of people hoping to tap into the benefits and opportunities of urban areas. Ensuring not only sustainable economic growth, but also spatial transformation and inclusive economic growth in these regions will be key contributors to realising the desired Ideal National Spatial Development Pattern.

5.7.5.2 Focus of Actions and Interventions

Guided by the Ideal National Spatial Development Patterns and the NSDF Sub-Frames, the following proposals are made:

- Plan for and undertake infrastructure maintenance at scale, to (1) ensure economic vitality, and (2) avoid human health and safety risks because of ageing infrastructure, lack of maintenance and damage by climate change-related hazards on water, sanitation, storm water, transport and electricity networks;
- Develop specific funding, land access, land tenure and service provision mechanisms to (1) enable higher residential densities, (2) provide a range of housing options, (3) alleviate pressure on basic and social service provision, (4) optimise urban land reform dividends, (5) manage urban growth, and (6) provide effective mass public transport;
- Support small-scale farmers in the regions to improve food security and employment;
- Support innovation and skills development in growing economic sectors, with a focus on youth development and employment at scale;
- Support and maintain key export routes and ports; and
- Prepare for climate change by amongst other measures, initiating an in-depth study into the long-term impacts of climate change on the core urban areas of the country, and developing mitigation and adaptation strategies, e.g. desalination, urban food production, and low/no-carbon energy generation, based on the findings of the study.

In the following figures (Figures 61 to 63) and tables (Tables 22 to 27), (1) a spatial image of each of the three National Urban Regions, (2) a summary of the key statistics regarding each of the regions, (3) the names of the affected municipalities in each of the regions, and (4) the names of the key settlements in each of the regions is provided.
Figure 61: Greater Gauteng Region Close-Up

Table 22: Greater Gauteng Region population and economy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CATEGORY</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
<th>% OF NATIONAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Population 2016</td>
<td>14 846 703</td>
<td>26.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Youth (under 35)</td>
<td>9 295 730</td>
<td>25.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population 2030 (medium growth)</td>
<td>17 863 527</td>
<td>27.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population 2050 (medium growth)</td>
<td>21 683 800</td>
<td>28.9%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total GVA 2016 (R mil)</td>
<td>975 092.82</td>
<td>36.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unemployed 2016</td>
<td>1 790 760</td>
<td>31.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor Households 2011</td>
<td>589480</td>
<td>29.0%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Productive land: +/-19 200 km² = 2.95% of national productive land

National Urban Network Elements:
- Urban Core: Gauteng Metropolitan Region; and
- Regional Development Anchors: Brits.

Table 23: Greater Gauteng Region affected municipalities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROVINCE</th>
<th>LOCAL MUNICIPALITY</th>
<th>DISTRICT/METROPOLITAN MUNICIPALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FS</td>
<td>Metsimaholo</td>
<td>Fezile Dabi (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GT</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>City of Johannesburg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GT</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>City of Tshwane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GT</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Ekurhuleni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GT</td>
<td>Emfuleni</td>
<td>Sedibeng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GT</td>
<td>Lesedi</td>
<td>Sedibeng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GT</td>
<td>Midvaal</td>
<td>Sedibeng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GT</td>
<td>Merafong City</td>
<td>West Rand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GT</td>
<td>Mogale City</td>
<td>West Rand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GT</td>
<td>Rand West City</td>
<td>West Rand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Thembisile</td>
<td>Nkangala (part of)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PROVINCE | LOCAL MUNICIPALITY | DISTRICT/METROPOLITAN MUNICIPALITY
---|---|---
NW | Madibeng | Bojanala (part of)
NW | Moretele | Bojanala (part of)

Table 24: Greater Cape Town Region population and economy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CATEGORY</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
<th>% OF NATIONAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Population 2016</td>
<td>4 243 363</td>
<td>7.61%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Youth (under 35)</td>
<td>2 550 481</td>
<td>7.08%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population 2030 (medium growth)</td>
<td>4 989 264</td>
<td>7.64%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population 2050 (medium growth)</td>
<td>5 781 830</td>
<td>7.70%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total GVA 2016 (R mil)</td>
<td>276 706.42</td>
<td>10.33%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unemployed 2016</td>
<td>404 661</td>
<td>7.07%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor Households 2011</td>
<td>189 728</td>
<td>6.4%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Productive land**: +/- 2 500km² = 0.4% of national productive land

National Urban Network Elements:
- **Urban Core**: City of Cape Town Urban Region.

Table 25: Greater Cape Town Region affected municipalities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROVINCE</th>
<th>LOCAL MUNICIPALITY</th>
<th>DISTRICT/METROPOLITAN MUNICIPALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WC</td>
<td>Stellenbosch</td>
<td>Cape Winelands (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WC</td>
<td>Swartland</td>
<td>West Coast (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WC</td>
<td>City of Cape Town</td>
<td>City of Cape Town</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Table 26: Greater eThekwini Region population and economy**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CATEGORY</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
<th>% OF NATIONAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Population 2016</td>
<td>4,571,794</td>
<td>8.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Youth (under 35)</td>
<td>2,936,152</td>
<td>8.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population 2030 (medium growth)</td>
<td>5,534,789</td>
<td>8.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population 2050 (medium growth)</td>
<td>6,447,311</td>
<td>8.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total GVA 2016 (R mil)</td>
<td>278,492.51</td>
<td>10.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unemployed 2016</td>
<td>538,669</td>
<td>9.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor Households 2011</td>
<td>256,731</td>
<td>8.7%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Productive land:** ± 3,800 km² = 0.6% of national productive land

**National Urban Network Elements:**

- **Urban Core:** eThekwini Urban Region

**Table 27: Greater eThekwini Region affected municipalities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROVINCE</th>
<th>LOCAL MUNICIPALITY</th>
<th>DISTRICT/METROPOLITAN MUNICIPALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>KZN</td>
<td>Umdoni</td>
<td>Ugu (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KZN</td>
<td>KwaDukuza</td>
<td>iLembe (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KZN</td>
<td>Ndwedwe</td>
<td>iLembe (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KZN</td>
<td>Richmond</td>
<td>Umgungundlovu (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KZN</td>
<td>uMshwathi</td>
<td>Umgungundlovu (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KZN</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>eThekwini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KZN</td>
<td>Mkhambathini</td>
<td>Umgungundlovu (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KZN</td>
<td>Msunduzi</td>
<td>Umgungundlovu (part of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KZN</td>
<td>uMngeni</td>
<td>Umgungundlovu (part of)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.7.6 NSAA 5: Arid-Innovation Region

Figure 64: Arid-Innovation Region Overview
5.7.6.1 Significance of the Arid Innovation Region as NSAA

This region comprises the arid and sparsely populated western and southwestern central parts of the country. It is set to be significantly affected by future climate change trends, notably (1) higher temperatures and (2) less rainfall in large parts of the region, requiring a consolidated response.

In terms of the key characteristics of region:

- The towns, their inhabitants, their economies and the economy of the wider arid region in which they are located, are under constant threat from a limited availability of water; and
- Most of the towns are heavily reliant on a single economic sector, typically agriculture or mining. This makes them very vulnerable to (1) external factors, such as currency fluctuations, trade disputes and changes in the demand for commodities, and (2) more local factors, notably climate change in the form of a significant rise in temperature, more very hot days, a greater risk of veld fires, and the advent of even drier conditions and water shortages.

Due to current challenges and increasing climatic pressures, this region requires a range of targeted interventions. This is necessary to ensure the future well-being of its inhabitants, the health of its economy and the sustainable use of its natural resources. It is also important to harness the nationally significant opportunities of this region, including its niche agricultural activities and fisheries, mineral deposits, potential for alternative energy generation and contribution to the international scientific community through the SKA.

5.7.6.2 Focus of Actions and Interventions

Guided by the Ideal National Spatial Development Patterns and the NSDF Sub-Frames, the following proposals are made:

- Pursue regional adaptation, economic diversification and agri-innovation at scale, to ensure greater resilience of livelihoods in the region;
- Limit expansion and development of new settlements in very arid areas, and pursue and support compact settlement development around social service nodes and taxi routes in towns and villages, within assured water availability limits;
- Enhance regional, cross-provincial and cross-municipal boundary collaborative spatial development planning and governance;
- Establish strong regional growth and development compacts, including all role-players, i.e. the three spheres of government, traditional leaders, communities (notably youth), the private sector, CBOs, NGOs and organised labour;
- Encourage and support inhabitants of such towns to become self-sufficient and ‘go off the grid’ with regards to (1) water, electricity and sanitation services, and (2) food production;
- Enhance ICT linkages, to support distance-learning and provide access to other social services; and
- Discourage new temporary settlement formation for mining or large-scale construction projects, e.g. the building of a solar-plant by facilitating housing-provision in closest existing regional development anchors and/or regional service towns and support with public transport.
Figure 65: Arid-Innovation Region

Table 28: Arid-innovation Region population and economy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CATEGORY</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
<th>% OF NATIONAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Population 2016</td>
<td>2 646 251</td>
<td>4.7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Youth (under 35)</td>
<td>1 655 521</td>
<td>4.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population 2030 (medium growth)</td>
<td>2 900 485</td>
<td>4.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population 2050 (medium growth)</td>
<td>3 102 292</td>
<td>4.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total GVA 2016 (R mil)</td>
<td>100 694.91</td>
<td>3.7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unemployed 2016</td>
<td>215 642</td>
<td>3.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor Households 2011</td>
<td>118 713</td>
<td>4.0%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Productive land: +/- 132,000 km² = 20% of national productive land

National Urban Network Elements:

- **Urban Core**: Sol Plaatje;
- **Regional Development Anchors**: Oudtshoorn, Beaufort West, Clanwilliam, Graaff Reinet, Cradock, Queenstown, Calvinia, Aliwal North, De Aar, Springbok, Upington and Kuruman;
Table 29: Arid-Innovation Region affected municipalities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROVINCE</th>
<th>LOCAL MUNICIPALITY</th>
<th>DISTRICT/METROPOLITAN MUNICIPALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EC</td>
<td>Blue Crane Route</td>
<td>Cacadu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EC</td>
<td>Dr Beyers Naude</td>
<td>Cacadu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EC</td>
<td>Enoch Mgijima</td>
<td>Chris Hani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EC</td>
<td>Inxuba Yethemba</td>
<td>Chris Hani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EC</td>
<td>Raymond Mhlaba</td>
<td>Amathole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EC</td>
<td>Walter Sisulu</td>
<td>Joe Gqabi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FS</td>
<td>Kapanong</td>
<td>Xhariep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FS</td>
<td>Letsemeng</td>
<td>Xhariep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>!Kheis</td>
<td>Z F Mgcawu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Dawid Kruiper</td>
<td>Z F Mgcawu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Dikgatlong</td>
<td>Frances Baard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Emthanjeni</td>
<td>Pixley ka Seme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Gamagara</td>
<td>John Taolo Gaetsewe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Ga-Segonyana</td>
<td>John Taolo Gaetsewe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Hantam</td>
<td>Namakwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Joe Morolong</td>
<td>John Taolo Gaetsewe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Kai IGarib</td>
<td>Z F Mgcawu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Kamiesberg</td>
<td>Namakwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Kareeberg</td>
<td>Pixley ka Seme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Karoo Hoogland</td>
<td>Namakwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Kgatelopele</td>
<td>Z F Mgcawu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Khâi-Ma</td>
<td>Namakwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Magareng</td>
<td>Frances Baard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Nama Khoi</td>
<td>Namakwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Renosterberg</td>
<td>Pixley ka Seme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Richtersveld</td>
<td>Namakwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Siyancuma</td>
<td>Pixley ka Seme</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROVINCE</th>
<th>LOCAL MUNICIPALITY</th>
<th>DISTRICT/METROPOLITAN MUNICIPALITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Siyathemba</td>
<td>Pixley ka Seme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Sol Plaatjie</td>
<td>Frances Baard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Thembelihle</td>
<td>Pixley ka Seme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Tsantsabane</td>
<td>Z F Mgcawu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Ubuntu</td>
<td>Pixley ka Seme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Umsobomvu</td>
<td>Pixley ka Seme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NW</td>
<td>Greater Taung</td>
<td>Dr Ruth Segomotsi Mompati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NW</td>
<td>Kagisano/Molopo</td>
<td>Dr Ruth Segomotsi Mompati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WC</td>
<td>Beaufort West</td>
<td>Central Karoo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WC</td>
<td>Cederberg</td>
<td>West Coast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WC</td>
<td>Kannaland</td>
<td>Eden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WC</td>
<td>Laingsburg</td>
<td>Central Karoo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WC</td>
<td>Matzikama</td>
<td>West Coast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WC</td>
<td>Oudtshoorn</td>
<td>Eden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WC</td>
<td>Prince Albert</td>
<td>Central Karoo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WC</td>
<td>Witzenberg</td>
<td>Cape Winelands</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.7.7 Implementation: Roles and Responsibilities

Table 30: Implementation Roles and Responsibilities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NSAA</th>
<th>LEAD ROLE PLAYERS</th>
<th>OTHER IMPORTANT ROLE PLAYERS</th>
<th>INTERVENTIONS: 5 YEAR HORIZON</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| National Transformation Corridors | Department of Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation  
Department of Rural Development and Land Reform  
Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs  
Eastern Cape Province (Coastal Transformation Corridor)  
Mpumalanga and Limpopo Provinces (Eastern Escarpment Transformation Corridor) | National and Provincial Environmental Departments  
National Department of Water and Sanitation  
National and Provincial Agriculture, Forestry and Fishery Departments  
National and Provincial Transport/Public Works Departments  
National and Provincial Human Settlements  
Department of Energy  
Provincial and National Tourism  
Affected Municipalities  
SALGA | • Awareness raising among relevant national, provincial and municipal stakeholders of the provisions and directives of the NSDF for the corridor.  
• A Regional SDF addressing and/or providing for at least the following aspects and issues in the corridor:  
  o The regional urban network, including urban cores, regional development anchors and rural service centres, including an audit of current service levels for each element of the network;  
  o New and upgraded strategic regional infrastructure to connect elements of the regional urban network;  
  o Environmental and resource management measures, taking cognisance of climate change risks and pressures;  
  o Development management measures to solidify the regional urban network, e.g. urban and rural edges, and densification and de-densification strategies;  
  o Catalytic economic projects, including a focus on eco-production and livelihood, agri-enterprise, strengthening of small-scale farming areas, high-value tourism and the marine economy; and  
  o A Five-year Implementation plan including partnerships in the region between traditional leaders, the provincial government, municipalities, civil society and business required.  
• Land reform that is cognisant of the critical future role of the corridors in national economic development.  
• Review of relevant provincial and municipal planning and implementation frameworks to accommodate measures identified in the RSDF. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NSAA</th>
<th>LEAD ROLE PLAYERS</th>
<th>OTHER IMPORTANT ROLE PLAYERS</th>
<th>INTERVENTIONS: 5 YEAR HORIZON</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Central Innovation Belt</td>
<td>Department of Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation</td>
<td>Provinces: Gauteng, Free State, Mpumalanga, North West</td>
<td>• Strengthening of local government through capacity building and financial strategies focussed on increasing income and decreasing grant-dependency, and relationship-building with traditional leadership.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Department of Rural Development and Land Reform</td>
<td>National and Provincial Economic Development Departments</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>National and Provincial Environmental Departments</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Department of Water and Sanitation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>National and Provincial Human Settlements Departments</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Department of Mineral Resources</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Department of Energy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Affected Municipalities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Resource Risk</td>
<td>Department of Environmental Affairs</td>
<td>Department of Agriculture</td>
<td>• Focussed economic development strategy, with a focus on diversification, investment attraction and skills development. The strategy should be formulated in a collaborative manner, including key regional stakeholder such as mining houses, labour organisations, large investors and environmental action groups.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Areas</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Environmental management measures to mitigate the impact on nationally significant natural resources, including the Vaal catchment area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• The ongoing Vaal RSDF process should take into account regional urban network elements, roles and service profiles, as proposed in the NSDF, and include measures to strengthen and consolidate the settlements in the region by use of the appropriate connecting infrastructure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Strengthening of local government through capacity building and financial strategies focused on capacity to deal with increased levels of service delivery, economic development and human settlement development.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A strategic resource management plan for each of the National Resource Risk Areas that may take the form of a Regional SDF or Environmental Management Plan, or similar suitable measure focussing on:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NSAA</th>
<th>LEAD ROLE PLAYERS</th>
<th>OTHER IMPORTANT ROLE PLAYERS</th>
<th>INTERVENTIONS: 5 YEAR HORIZON</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
|      | Department of Water and Sanitation | Department of Mineral Resources  
Department of Energy and Eskom  
Department of Rural Development and Land Reform  
National and Provincial Human Settlements Departments  
All municipalities & provinces affected  
Key partnerships / stakeholders such as Strategic Water Partners Network, Mining Houses, Agricultural Organisations | • Identification of the high risk areas per region, including future climate change risks;  
• Specific measures to conserve quality of water resources; and  
• Specific measures to manage competition for land, water and energy between land uses, such as agriculture, mining, human settlement and nature conservation. |
| National Urban Regions | Department of Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation  
Department of Cooperative | Department of Rural Development and Land Reform  
National Treasury  
Department of Water and Sanitation | • Raising of awareness among relevant national, provincial and municipal stakeholders of the provisions of the NSDF for the urban regions and their role in the national economy, population trends and the impact of climate change.  
• Utilise existing instruments, such as Municipal and Regional Spatial Development Frameworks and Built Environment Performance Plans to place a greater emphasis on: |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NSAA</th>
<th>LEAD ROLE PLAYERS</th>
<th>OTHER IMPORTANT ROLE PLAYERS</th>
<th>INTERVENTIONS: 5 YEAR HORIZON</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
|                     | Government and Traditional Affairs Western Cape Province and affected municipalities | Other affected National and Provincial Department per region SALGA SACN | - Planning for future population growth, including its impact on basic municipal and social services;  
- Mitigation-measures for climate change impact;  
- Economic development including regional and global linkages; and  
- Consolidation, densification and formalisation of urban areas through strict implementation of anti-sprawl measures.  
  - Establishment of an Intergovernmental Forum for each urban region to address the above pressures in a consolidated manner. |
|                     | Gauteng Province and affected municipalities                                      | Key private sector role players including business, labour, environment and mining |                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|                     | KZN Province and affected municipalities                                          |                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Arid-Innovation Region | Department of Rural Development and Land Reform Department of Cooperative Government and Traditional Affairs Northern Cape Province Eastern Cape Province | Affected municipalities National and Provincial Environmental Departments Department of Water and Sanitation Department of Mineral Resources Department of Energy | - Raising awareness among relevant national, provincial and municipal stakeholders of the provisions of the NSDF for the region.  
- Utilised existing regional planning/Regional Spatial Development Framework processes to focus on the following:  
  - Potential change in economic base in response to climate change;  
  - Concentration of population in key settlements, and the role of different types of settlement in service provision and employment;  
  - Improved linkages between settlements and production areas;  
  - Marine economy; and  
  - Green energy generation.  
- Strengthening of local government through capacity-building and financial strategies focussed on increasing income and decreasing grant-dependency. |
5.7.8 National Risk of Non-Action

The NSDF seeks to fundamentally and decisively change and transform South Africa from a country shackled by its past, into a truly free and just country that offers a (1) decent quality of life, and (2) a fair chance to make a life, to all who live in it. To this effect it puts forward a series of proposals to bring this transition about, and identified the set of NSAAs, as briefly described in Section 5.7.6. Yet, it may be that there is a reluctance, slowness or unwillingness to implement the proposals. The table below (Table 31) sets out the risks associated with failure to act in and on the NSAAs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NSAA</th>
<th>LEAD ROLE PLAYERS</th>
<th>OTHER IMPORTANT ROLE PLAYERS</th>
<th>INTERVENTIONS: 5 YEAR HORIZON</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Western Cape Province</td>
<td>Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries</td>
<td>SALGA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 31**

**National Risk of Non-Action**

The NSDF seeks to fundamentally and decisively change and transform South Africa from a country shackled by its past, into a truly free and just country that offers a (1) decent quality of life, and (2) a fair chance to make a life, to all who live in it. To this effect it puts forward a series of proposals to bring this transition about, and identified the set of NSAAs, as briefly described in Section 5.7.6. Yet, it may be that there is a reluctance, slowness or unwillingness to implement the proposals. The table below (Table 31) sets out the risks associated with failure to act in and on the NSAAs.
Table 31: Risks on Non-Action in/on the NSAAs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HIGH RISKS OF NON-ACTION IN/ON STRATEGIC ACTION AREAS</th>
<th>RESULTANT IMPLICATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Lack of development management in national ecological and biodiversity management areas, such as the Natural Resource Risk Areas and the National Transformation Corridors | • Unmanaged urban growth and land-use resource risk areas and transformation corridors with resultant negative impacts on (1) sensitive ecological infrastructure, (2) the tourism sector, and (3) other economic opportunities of national significance.  
• ‘Running out of water’, which will have detrimental effects on (1) all inhabitants dependant on these urban regions, but notably so vulnerable communities, (2) job creation, (3) agriculture and food production, and (4) living costs.  
• Continued settlement development infiltrating high-value agriculture and strategic national surface water production areas.  
• Due to the population size and scale of settlement in national urban regions, massive losses of biodiversity and crucial ecosystems services for urban regions, the country at large, and the globe. |
| Lack of action in areas were land-use and water bodies and production are in competition | • Will most likely cause severe risks to stressed catchments in fulfilling their roles, and place downstream dependent regions at risk.  
• Could lead to costly pollution and life-threatening toxicity of water bodies and streams with a resultant threat to human, plant and animal life and enormous financial expenses to resolve the matter.  
• Failure to manage competitive land use between human settlements, water production and food production can result in food and water shortages. |
| Failure to maintain and improve international trade and movement infrastructure (routes and ports) | • A loss in South Africa’s competitive advantage with regards to infrastructure.  
• Restricting growth and limiting national, SADC, African and global integration.  
• An increased burden on road networks if the rail network is not attended to. |
| Failure to improve and extend critical infrastructure and develop the three National Transformation Corridors | • Increased sprawl, loss of high-value agricultural land, loss of surface water production areas, an increase in joblessness and growing frustration and associated risks to national cohesion and stability.  
• A squandering of a real opportunity to turn around the dreadful spatial, social and economic legacies of Apartheid in what includes large swaths of former Bantustan areas. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HIGH RISKS OF NON-ACTION IN/ON STRATEGIC ACTION AREAS</th>
<th>RESULTANT IMPLICATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Lack of future-orientated, nationally directed urban growth in areas of opportunity | • Urban and settlement growth merely following existing trends (as illustrated through spatial modelling of most likely trends without intervention), which will severely reduce our ability to (1) create viable livelihoods at scale, (2) threaten our natural resources, and (3) reduce government’s ability to provide sustainable services in towns.  
• The legacies of the colonial and Apartheid pasts will become even more deeply entrenched across the national urban-rural landscape.  
• Towns in arid areas with unfavourable climate conditions will become ever-more exposed to risks that they will most likely not be able to counter or manage. |
| Ineffective governance, funding shortfalls in the provision of municipal infrastructure, and a lack of a nationally targeted, systematic, systemic and long-term developmental focus on large urban areas, towns and national development corridors with large urban concentrations | • A loss of the opportunity to harness the ‘triple dividend’ of a youthful population, many of whom are located in urban areas.  
• A serious likelihood of unmanaged urban growth and land-use in coastal areas with devastating effects on (1) sensitive ecological infrastructure, and (2) related tourism and economic activities and opportunities.  
• An increasing inability of even large municipalities to meet the growing demands of a fast-growing population, and provide services and sustain environments in which economies can take root and grow, leading to (1) outbreaks of disease with associated chronic public health risks, (2) business closures, (3) more unemployment and more crime, (5) a loss in the quality of life in urban areas, (6) massive social unrest and an increase in xenophobic attacks and violence, (7) the collapse of the Rand and the large-scale departure of local and foreign investors, and (8) the mass emigration of millions of especially young South Africans. |
PART SIX: Implementation Framework
6.1 Introduction

The implementation framework outlines the measures, approach and actions required to realising our National Spatial Development Vision in a coherent, diligent and systematic way.

The NSDF is aimed at addressing our history of forced removals, spatial segregation and unequal spatial investment. This legacy of colonialism and Apartheid persists to this day, and leads to the perpetuation of inequality, unemployment and poverty. The Apartheid National Spatial Development Logic underpinning this legacy has to be disrupted and undone, to enable us to bring about a very different future.

Despite much progress having been made since 1994 in (1) the provision of basic services, (2) housing delivery, and (3) integrated development legislation, policy and planning, the unequal spatial development patterns have continued. We have failed to bring about spatial transformation, i.e. moving from a segregated, unequal and inefficient Apartheid National Spatial Development Pattern to a new, integrated, inclusive and sustainable Ideal National Spatial Development Pattern.

The major gap in our transformation effort has been at a strategic spatial investment and implementation level, where, despite a sound National Development Paradigm including the Constitution, the NDP and a progressive legal and policy framework, we have not been able to disrupt and overcome colonial and apartheid spatial development logics in practice.

The NDP recognises that it is only through radical and decisive intervention that is coherently planned for and managed in the national sphere at the national scale, that we stand a chance of disrupting the apartheid spatial logic and space economy, and overcoming the inequities and distances brought about by colonialism and Apartheid.

The NSDF has been prepared to give effect to the NDP by providing national spatial development guidance and direction. As such, the NSDF is closing the gap in our transformation effort by changing and influencing practice by becoming clearer about (1) the strategic spatial development challenges and opportunities across the country, and (2) the desired National Spatial Development Outcomes.

The NSDF’s analysis of National Spatial Development Shapers indicates the five key problems emanating from the current national spatial development pattern that the country has to address:

- High pressure on natural resources;
- Inequitable use of land;
- High rates of urbanisation with high pressure and expectations of adequate housing, basic services and jobs;
- High levels of poverty in the former Bantustan and township areas; and
- A disconnected national spatial pattern where there is mis-alignment between where economic activity takes place and where people live, where natural resources are located, and costly infrastructure networks is in place.

The NSDF’s theory of change presents the pathway from the current situation to the desired spatial future, and the NSDF by:

- Crafting a strong and credible and Post-Apartheid National Spatial Development Vision;
- Articulating a compelling and persuasive Post-Apartheid Spatial Development Logic:
• Crafting a desired Post-Apartheid National Spatial Development Pattern;
• Setting out interventions and actions that are required to bring about the desired Post-Apartheid National Spatial Development Pattern; and
• Providing Implementation Guidance for realising the desired national spatial transformation.

As such, and it being positioned alongside and in tandem with the NDP, the NSDF, once adopted by Cabinet, will be the Apex Spatial Plan for the country, and it will remain so until it is reviewed in the future. This means that henceforth all spatial plans, investment and projects in the country have to give effect to achieving the NSDF intent and adhere to the NSDF Frames and Guidelines.

In order to transcend the “practice gap”, there will be a rigorous focus on holding all three spheres of government, sector departments and social actors accountable for their (1) planning, (2) investment decisions and (3) delivery programmes, according to the extent to which these processes advance the objectives of the NDP and the NSDF, and adhere to the spatial development guidance and directives of the NSDF.

### 6.2 Preparing for Success

The successful implementation of the NSDF is dependent on all role players within and outside of government understanding the spatial guidance and directives, and interpreting, advancing, applying and adhering to these.

The scale of spatial change identified over the 2050-horizon as well as the limited window of opportunity to realise the demographic and urban dividend, means that there has to be an acceleration towards the desired spatial future pathway and outcomes. This will require (1) a renewed vigour, belief and urgency, (2) a posture of excellence and country success, and (3) retooled and even new capabilities to build an inclusive and prosperous society in a far more focused and methodical manner.

The NSDF guides and promotes coordinated work across government and society where every national department, state entity, province, municipality, civil society organisation, private sector, and the public has to:

- Be aware of and appreciate the national spatial transformation imperative of the country;
- Understand and promote the National Spatial Development Vision 2050, and commit to realising the vision; and
- Be accountable for the spatial impact of planning, investment and actions as they relate to achieving the Ideal National Spatial Development Pattern and the spatial transformation of places.

The state will lead the process under the framework of the NDP by ensuring a cohesive government approach with the NSDF sitting complementarily to the NDP at the apex of the country’s spatial development planning system. The implementation of the NSDF operates as such within the constitutional framework of the country, as well as within the precepts of the Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act, 2005, with regards to coordinating the implementation of national priorities, and in furthering the objectives set out in SPLUMA, in particular:

- The NSDF has to indicate the desired patterns of land use in the country and guide and direct provincial and municipal SDFs accordingly; and
The NSDF has to guide planning and development across all sectors of the national sphere of government, and contribute to a coherent planned approach to spatial development in the three spheres of government.

Implementation of the NSDF entails the process of adapting and improving the process of development planning across government and ensuring that it informs government (corporate/departmental) planning, budgeting (investment), delivery and enforcement (spatial governance), to achieve the desired national spatial development outcomes.

The NSDF at the apex of the country’s development planning system informs the government (or corporate/organizational) planning cycle. The development plans (sector strategies, provincial growth and development strategies and provincial spatial development frameworks, municipal integrated development plans and spatial development frameworks) are strategic, integrated and/or sector-wide long-term plans, whilst the corporate plans are short-medium term departmental plans (national, provincial and municipal) linked to the Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) and the annual and three-year multi-year budgeting (MTEF) cycle.

The successful implementation of the NSDF will require additional and more appropriate capacity to be developed across government for this approach to long-term strategic planning, investment have a positive spatial development impact on delivery. All departments, state entities, provinces and municipalities will have to (1) retool existing capabilities, and (2) find, or augment capacity for the new task at hand, working together with industry, tertiary institutions and professional bodies.

This must also be an opportunity to tap into the agility and resourcefulness of young planners and nurture and fast-track young talented planners who have the passion and drive for making a better future.

6.3 Work Streams

The implementation of the NSDF refers to what in essence are four processes running in parallel and these are accordingly arranged into four interrelated work streams, i.e.:

- Workstream 1: Championing and Support;
- Workstream 2: Development Planning Alignment;
- Workstream 3: Investment Spending Alignment; and
- Workstream 4: Spatial Development Accountability.

Workstream 1: Championing and Support

This workstream pertains to the custodianship of the NSDF and the process of ensuring that the NSDF is being advanced and institutionalised within government and across society.

A dedicated Spatial Transformation Unit in national government with the necessary resources and authority will be responsible for the following:

Embedding the NSDF in government and across society:

- Championing and guiding NSDF implementation;
- Undertaking broad-based communication of the NSDF to build shared understanding;
- Institutionalisation of the NSDF into Centre of Government Planning, Budgeting, Implementation, Monitoring and Evaluation Systems;
• Undertaking ongoing spatial development observation and research;
• Embedding collaborative planning and action;
• Undertaking ongoing engagement spatial development norms, standards and differentiated guidelines for different integrated, inclusive and sustainable settlement formations;
• Providing technical support to departments, provinces, and municipalities in interpreting and applying the NSDF Frames and guidelines; and
• Reviewing and updating the NSDF.

Engaging in review of policy and fiscal tools and instruments that support and incentivize spatial transformation:

• Evaluating performance of fiscal instruments in relation to spatial transformation outcomes;
• Reviewing investment requirements, fiscal capacity, funding and financing strategies;
• Reviewing infrastructure and human settlement grant funding mechanisms;
• Undertaking socio-economic cost-benefit modelling; and
• Making recommendations with regard to the establishment of any special Spatial Funds.

Supporting coordination of spatial transformation and national priority actions:

• The NSDF will apply all at once across the country where the different role players have to exercise their mandates and perform their functions according to the spatial guidance and direction detailed in the NSDF Sub-Frames. There will have to be a focus on national priority issues and actions, i.e. the NSAAs, and these will be supported at a central coordinating level in a focused and phased manner;
• The Spatial Transformation Unit could sequence and support intensive focus and coordination of national sector strategies and plans in each urban and rural region and corridor for defined periods until all regions are spatially transformed between now and 2050; and
• Similarly, in alignment with the NSDF and in coordination with the national spatial transformation unit, each Province will prepare or refine/adapt their PSDF and will undertake coordination at provincial level, to identify and sequence focal areas within the province.

Workstream 2: Development Planning Alignment

This workstream entails the process by which sector departments, provinces and municipalities prepare their sector strategies, spatial and development plans. These plans have to be reviewed and aligned with the NSDF.

Each national department, state entity, province and municipality already has a mandate and set of responsibilities in terms of planning, implementation and spatial governance. These roles will continue, but they will now have to be undertaken in adherence with the NSDF.

The priority for each role player will be:

• National sector departments have to prepare or review their sector strategies as long-term plans that respond/align to the broader development goals and objectives set out in the NDP and the spatial development objectives and outcomes set out in the NSDF;
• The key priority sector issues and strategies will have to focus on:
  o Long-term water security for all, according to the desired future national spatial development pattern;
Energy security for all according to the desired future national spatial development pattern;

The provision of social services (schools, clinics, hospitals, community centres, sports fields, etc) to meet growth demands and according to the desired future spatial development pattern;

Protection of high value agricultural land, surface water and biodiversity areas;

Providing guidance as to where future settlement growth may take place, according to the desired future national spatial development pattern, and limiting the footprint of land development and human settlement in the process;

Developing economic development strategy, highlighting the role, potential, opportunities and unique selling points across different places;

The justification, spatial impacts and place-making logics of new economic nodes (SEZs, mines, industrial parks, commercial hubs) and economic infrastructure investment including roads, ports, rail, and telecommunications;

Rehabilitation of mining land in declining mining areas and diversification of local economies;

Guiding and resolving conflicting land uses according to the NSDF guidelines and by undertaking research and obtaining independent inputs and recommendations;

Initiating well-considered rural development strategies and rural economic diversification and industrialization; and

Working together with traditional leaders, preparing a framework for, and ensuring agreement on undertaking settlement planning and unlocking land development in areas under traditional authority control.

Provinces have to:

Prepare or review their PGDSs and PSDFs and align these with the NSDF;

Coordinate the alignment of provincial sector and municipal plans and demonstrate how this alignment is contributing to the adherence of the NSDF; and

Change provincial spending patterns according to desired spatial impact, especially human settlement subsidies.

Similarly, municipalities have to:

Prepare or review their IDPs and SDFs for their area of jurisdiction according to the spatial guidance and direction provided in the NSDF, and in alignment with the respective province; and

Conduct spatial governance, undertake their spatial planning and land use management functions, more rigorously and in strict adherence with spatial transformation and inclusive place-making objectives as outlined in the NSDF.

The private sector has to:

Undertake investment and prepare development applications in accordance with the NSDF spatial guidance; and

Adhere to the SDF of the respective municipalities, and not undermine municipalities and/or act in any manner that compromises the shift to an efficient and inclusive spatial forms.

**Workstream 3: Investment Spending Alignment**

This workstream entails the process by which departments, state entities, provinces and municipalities undertake their budgeting and implementation processes. These processes have to be aligned to the NSDF.
National Treasury (NT) will have to consider the alignment with the NSDF in the allocation and approval of budgets. A joint committee between the Spatial Transformation Unit and NT will consider infrastructure investment spending proposals and large-scale projects will have to undergo spatial impact assessment prior to any approvals.

**Workstream 4: National Spatial Development Accountability**

A special spatial impact monitoring and reporting unit will be established to set up and operate a national spatial accountability system. This will entail coordinating the reporting by the various departments, state entities, provinces, municipalities and private sector in relation to adherence to the spatial guidance and direction set out in the NSDF and in relation to the performance of their own functions and performance against any specific/relevant actions identified in the NSDF.

Whereas in the past, role players were not sufficiently held to account for the spatial impact of their planning, investing and delivery processes, now each of the role players including private sector as part of the national spatial accountability system will be more rigorously engaged and will be obligated to report on how they are adhering/contributing or not through the performance of their own functions to the desired spatial development patterns and outcomes.

The unit will establish criteria based on the NSDF Frames in assessing the planning and investment of role players and will prepare and submit reports on annual basis to cabinet to identify gaps and make proposals on improving alignment and adherence to the NSDF.

Workstream 1 will oversee and provide support for the alignment processes undertaken in workstreams 2 and 3. Workstream 4 will monitor the alignment and impacts of work undertaken in workstreams 2 and 3 (see Figure 66).
Figure 66: Workstream Overview

**WORKSTREAMS**

**WORK STREAM 1: CHAMPIONING AND SUPPORT**
- Institutionalising the NSDF
- Embedding Collaboration
- Technical Support
- Fiscal Proposals

**KEY ACTIVITIES**

**WORK STREAM 2: DEVELOPMENT PLANNING ALIGNMENT**
- Alignment of Sector Strategies to NSDF
- Alignment of PSDFs to NSDF
- Alignment of MSDFs to NSDF
- Alignment of Private Sector Plans

**RESPONSIBILITY**

- Spatial Transformation Unit (STU)

**WORK STREAM 3: INVESTMENT SPENDING ALIGNMENT**
- Alignment of Investments and Projects to NSDF
- Budget Approvals
- Large Projects: Spatial Impact Assessment

**RESPONSIBILITY**

- Departments, State Entities, Provinces and Municipalities
  - Joint Committee NT and STU

**WORK STREAM 4: SPATIAL ACCOUNTABILITY**
- Spatial Impact Monitoring
- Reporting
- Learning

**RESPONSIBILITY**

- Spatial Monitoring and Reporting Unit
6.4 Rolling out the NSDF

For the NSDF vision and goals to be achieved, along with the desired national spatial transformation, there are enabling activities, institutional mechanisms and capability enhancements that need to be considered for the national planning system to operate. As argued in a recent DPME report, “The imperative for institutionalisation is derived from identified gaps and the need to build the planning system by introducing a stronger and explicit developmental focus. In this context, institutionalisation means developing and strengthening the institutional, technical and administrative foundations (capacities, systems and processes) for a coordinated and responsive state that would be effective in promoting the structural changes required for inclusive growth, developing the country’s human resource base and a stronger democracy”. Capability enhancements to the spatial planning system include building spatial literacy within government and enhancing the coordination and alignment roles traditionally played by spatial planners in intergovernmental systems.

Given that the capability of the state is a key enabler of effective planning, governance and implementation, the implementation of the NSDF (1) is intrinsically tied to government’s institutional, organisational and individual capabilities, and (2) rests on two interrelated components:

- The use and application of the NSDF to guide action and spatial investment; and
- The building of ‘national spatial planning and transformation capability’ to undertake, manage and develop the benefits of spatial planning at an institutional, organisational and individual level within government and more broadly, across society.

The promulgation of SPLUMA has clarified the role of spatial planning and land-use management. At the same time, the systems and frameworks for intergovernmental planning and budgeting are being institutionalised and improved. Implementation, like planning, is, however, not a once-off step. In the case of the NSDF, it is also a continuous process of mobilising resources and action, guided by the objectives and desired outcomes of the NDP. Improvements and refinements are also made through monitoring and review, to (1) improve approaches and understandings, and (2) overcome obstacles on a continuous basis.

The NSDF has identified five areas for action that need to be considered. These consist of three enabling components and two change and transformation-driving components.

The three enabling components are:

- A championing capability, with associated programmes for building spatial transformation capability and supporting behaviour change;
- Supporting the ‘centre of government’ institutions in improving developmental outcomes through the system of planning, budgeting, implementation, monitoring and evaluation; and
- Guiding the alignment and coordination of investment spending and planning capacity development, both (1) within government spheres and sectors, and (2) through broader private sector, civil society and learning organisation support and involvement.

The two change and transformation-driving components are:

- Communicating and sharing the NSDF, to ensure that it is broadly understood, and its use is enabled; and
• Specific and priority spatially targeted initiatives that (1) are of national significance, and (2) draw from the core components of the NSDF, as set out in Part Five

The five action areas would, taken as a whole, enable the NSDF and national spatial planning to be:

• Championed: National spatial planning is championed, researched and continually refined and developed, and national spatial planning capability and support systems are built across society, to ensure the desired national spatial development patterns and outcomes;
• Communicated: The NSDF is broadly shared to ensure awareness and buy-in across society;
• Institutionalised in centre of government systems: National spatial planning (1) supports and responds to the developmental agenda of the state, as articulated in the NDP, and (2) is articulated through key national planning, budgeting, implementation, monitoring and evaluation systems;
• Embedded: The NSDF is well-understood and actors can (1) respond to it, and (2) utilize it to guide and coordinate investment to transform space through provincial, regional and municipal SDFs and sector plans; and
• Actioned: Strategic spatial initiatives and priorities within the NSDF are acted upon and implemented (1) in a systemic way, and (2) by appropriate champions and role-players who have a direct mandate relating to each priority.

Each of these aspects is discussed in more detail below:

6.4.1 Objective One: Championing and Guiding NSDF Implementation

A key capability is a national institutional home for spatial planning and spatial transformation. As a matter of urgency there is a need to resolve the issue of ‘the home of spatial planning nationally’. Consideration should also be given to establishing a dedicated ‘unit’, staffed with the necessary technical and administrative expertise. The aim of this Unit would be to:

• Provide advice and guidance on how to maximise spatial impacts and transformation across government;
• Actively coordinate across government for better spatial outcomes;
• Report on implementation of the NSDF, and the extent to which outcomes are achieved; and
• Build spatial literacy within government and strengthen the capacity and capability of planners and the spatial planning system.

Three functions would be important, amongst others. First, to work across government to align spatial action to the NSDF and support spatial transformation more broadly. This would be both at the strategic levels of the MTSP/MTSF and MTEF and other associated centre of government coordinating mechanisms and through national sector, provincial and local planning. Second, to champion research into, and around spatial planning and improving its utility to government. This could include working with learning organisations, civil society and other bodies to improve spatial planning capability. Third, to, through a consultative process, develop a framework for monitoring and evaluating the efficacy and realisation of spatial transformation, and in particular focusing on the priority actions associated with the NSDF frames.

To facilitate this role, it is proposed that consideration be given to establishing two supporting structures. Firstly, a ‘National Spatial
Transformation Working Group’ chaired by a/the lead spatial planning department. The aim of this working group would be to coordinate national action around spatial transformation. Second, a ‘National Spatial Transformation Committee’. This advisory and support committee should comprise representatives of the three spheres of government, the private sector, academia and professional bodies. Although drawing on the NSDF, this committee would have a broader focus and be composed with the aim of informing the spatial transformation agenda of government and society. Given the important role of evidence, monitoring and knowledge-sharing, this capacity needs to be enabled. As such, it could also guide the building and deepening of ‘spatial literacy’ and spatial planning capabilities amongst the built environment professions and within government.

The detailed terms of reference for the proposed Unit, Working Group and Committee would have to be developed while taking cognisance of existing structures and current processes, to avoid duplication and to ensure alignment, e.g. with the IUDF Working Group.

A priority for the proposed Unit, should be to engage in discussions with National Treasury on the development of a fund under the jurisdiction of the Unit to support transformation objectives. The scope of the fund would need to be developed in consultation, but aspects could include those relating to supporting spatial transformation initiatives of national significance (especially around coordination and alignment in space and time), spatial planning and transformation.

**6.4.2 Objective Two: Communication of Shared Action**

Communication is an essential and often neglected aspect of implementation. It is also a cost-effective way of building understanding and shared action. People and institutions can only act on, and invest in, a plan they know and understand. An effective communication strategy that targets all spheres of government, the private sector, academia and civil society will have to be put into place. The proposed Spatial Transformation Unit should be tasked with developing and implementing this, and the requisite funding provided.
This communications strategy would need to work across a range of platforms. Consideration should be given to professional communications support, to develop and, as and where necessary, implement certain components of the communications strategy. Two key components should be included in such a strategy:

- A strong web-presence and profiling on key government websites, and in particular, ‘centre of government departments’ xxx, which includes The Presidency, DPME, CoGTA, DRDLR, and NT; and
- The use of existing inter-governmental engagement platforms to profile and explain the NSDF, including key government partners, such as SALGA, who would be a crucial ally in introducing and communicating the NSDF to municipalities.

6.4.3 Objective Three: Institutionalisation of the NSDF into Centre of Government Planning, Budgeting, Implementation, Monitoring and Evaluation System

Consideration needs to be given as to how the NSDF will link to the broader systems of planning, budgeting, implementation, monitoring and evaluation in government. This includes discussion as to how the NSDF could, amongst others:

- Support and strengthen the proposed Medium-Term Strategic Plan (MTSP) and the Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF);
- Inform and help strengthen the ‘Budget Mandate Paper’;
- Improve alignment of sector and sphere budgeting, especially as related to spatially-targeted capital spending (and long-term infrastructure spending in particular);
- Contribute, through its implementation processes, to capacity building that impacts and supports spatial transformation; and
- Assist in identifying where special grants or other funding mechanisms could be considered to support spatial targeting, regional planning and other programmes aimed at spatial transformation

Figure 68: Clear Line of Sight

CLEAR LINE OF SIGHT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NDP</th>
<th>NSDF</th>
<th>MTSP</th>
<th>Mandate Paper</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sector Plans, Delivery Agreements, Departmental &amp; Municipal Plans</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Suggestions for discussion include:

**DPME**
- DPME utilizes the NSDF to provide the spatial lens to the Medium-Term Strategic Plan (MTSP).
- In line with the above, the DPME utilizes the NSDF as the spatial representation of the Mandate Paper (annually) prioritization and the MTSF (five-year cycle).
- That DPME monitors the alignment of sector budget spending in physical space in line with the NSDF.

**National Treasury**
- In recognising the role of the NSDF in coordinating spending in space, NT could consider ways to use it to guide national sector department budgets (especially long-term infrastructure) and check that programmes align to and reinforce the objectives of the NSDF.
- That this spending and prioritization is monitored and reported on.

**COGTA**
- That CoGTA supports the developmental, place-based and regional approach of the NSDF through capability-building and other related initiatives. This approach could take the form of regional intervention starting with PGDSs and PSDFs (and possibly associated RSDFs).

**DRDLR**
- That DRDLR (or the department responsible for spatial planning) establish a well-resourced and capacitated Spatial Planning Support Agency (or similar) that sees to, and if necessary, funds the placement of accredited spatial planners in every municipality.
- That DRDLR (or the department responsible for spatial planning) considers how to empower planners and support them in building and enabling cross-sphere alignment with spatial planning.

*Figure 69* below illustrates conceptually the interface of the NSDF with the national system of planning, budgeting, implementation and monitoring as discussed above and in the following section. Milestones of the implementation and monitoring system are as follows:
Figure 69: National Role in System of Planning, Budgeting, Implementation and Monitoring

1) 5-yearly national planning cycle (Centre of Government)

2) Sector department and municipal 3-5 yr strategic planning and budgeting

3) Sector department and municipal annual performance and budgeting
1.) **Five-year national planning cycle**: After a national election a five-year plan of action is developed. Given the status of the NDP, this draws from the NDP, a shared plan. This plan is used to inform the MTSF of government as a whole. The NSDF is aligned to the NDP and is likewise reviewed every five years. It must also find expression in the MTSP. Annually the Mandate Paper identifies key priorities, likewise, there should be spatial investment priorities identified drawing on the MTSP.

2.) **Three-to-five-year actions**: Taking their cue from the MTSF and NDP, sector departments and municipalities formulate their strategic plans (three-five years) and National Treasury developments the budget and MTEF to the same logic. National sector departments and municipalities must then utilise the NSDF to develop their own spatial depiction of their strategic plans and link these to their budgets (the spatial investment components).

3.) **Annual actions**: Annual performance plans and budgets then need to set targets for each against the long-term strategic plan.

---

6.4.4 **Objective Four: Embedding Implementation and Collaborative Action**

All government departments preparing sector plans need to consider their spatial impact, especially as related to capital and infrastructure spending, and such plans must be aligned with the spatial priorities outlined in the NSDF. The aim is to achieve crucial urban, rural, municipal, provincial, regional and national development goals and objectives. This discussion needs to be focused on the procedures to facilitate and promote cooperative government and intergovernmental relations in respect of spatial development planning.

This aspect needs to explore the way in which this is done through:

- National sector departments;
- Provincial government plans;
- Municipal planning;
- Sub-national or regional planning;
- The private sector;
- Civil society; and
- Learning organisations.
Suggestions for discussion include:

**National and Provincial Sector Departments**

It is suggested that national sector departments and their provincial counterparts add a spatial component to their strategic plans that (1) is aligned to the NSDF, and (2) depicts the location of their spending, especially those components with a specific spatial and/or capital/infrastructure expenditure component. In doing so, they should also indicate how they will engage with the unique attributes of the places where the investment will ‘land’ in a sub-national space in such manner that it (1) responds to the unique regional and local challenges (as articulated in the IDP and SDFs), and (2) supports regional and local development in the area concerned.

When new national policy or legislation is contemplated, a Socio-Economic Impact Assessment System (SEAIS) is required. The suggestion is that an indicative capital expenditure spatial framework be incorporated as part of the Socio-Economic Impact Assessment System (SEAIS).

**Provincial Government**

That Provincial Governments explore practical ways of utilizing the NSDF as an important contextual frame for the preparation of their PGDSs and PSDFs.

**Regional Development Collaborators**

The NSDF could identify, make use of and coordinate relevant regional collaboration, and/or spatial development planning initiatives. Recent examples are the Nama Karoo and the Northern Free-State Regional Initiatives, and associated RSDF processes.

**Local Government**

That consideration be given by municipalities to practically using the NSDF as a ‘crucial frame’ in the preparation and review of their IDPs and SDFs, and any other form of long-term strategic planning.

**Citizens and Civil Society Organisations & the Private Sector**

That citizens, civil society organisations and the private sector are encouraged to engage proactively and on a continuous base with the NSDF, to ensure that their investment and spending decisions (1) respond to, and support national, regional and local needs, and (2) actively contribute to national spatial transformation and inclusive economic growth.

**Learning Institutions and the Capacity building on national (1) trends, dynamics, challenges and opportunities, (2) sense-making, and (3) spatial development concepts and plans is important. Learning institutions are encouraged to**
follow, analyse and constructively critique the implementation of the NSDF with a view to offering reflections and insights on how it might be improved and/or refined when it is next reviewed.

Ongoing research on national spatial development and inter-regional dynamics and spatial development scenarios is imperative. These entities are ideally placed to initiate and undertake and sustain such research.

6.4.5 Objective Five: Sector Specific and Spatially Targeted Priorities Actioned

This objective is the most important for spatial transformation. All the preceding objectives ultimately need to focus on the sector specific and spatially-targeted priorities identified in the NSDF’s Frame and Sub-Frame.

The NSDF seeks to support improved investment impact and alignment of (1) national integrated and sector plans, and (2) provincial and regional plans and strategies within the context of government’s five-year planning and review cycle and process. As indicated in Figure 70 below, this it does by (1) being informed, and taking its cue from the NDP and a myriad of other multi-term, multi-sector, multi-sphere spatial-decision-making processes and plans, frameworks, strategies and programmes, and in turn (2) guiding many of these, and a range of other such plans, frameworks, strategies and programmes when they are being prepared, implemented and/or reviewed.

The envisaged role of the National Spatial Development Frame and Sub-Frame in the spatial alignment of Government’s planning instruments and cycles is set out in Figure 71.
Figure 71: The Envisaged Role of the National Spatial Development Frame, Sub-Frames and Strategic Spatial Action Areas in Spatial Planning

**ALIGNMENT**
- Shared spatial understanding
  - Spatial dynamics, trends, interdependencies and relations
  - Provides information about:
    - Interdependencies and demands on national and geo-specific resources & assets
    - National spatial patterns, needs, opportunities, trends.
    - Place based opportunities, challenges and interdependencies impacting government’s ability to achieve national priorities.
    - Patterns, dynamics and spatial forces that can pro-actively be used to address legacy of the apartheid and colonial past, and prepare for implications of fast changing spatial patterns.

**FUTURE**
- Shared vision
  - Role and contribution of respective regions, places, national resources, assets & spatial pattern in national development
  - Guides the spatial interpretation of the national vision in relation to the role of places, people-place relations, geo-specific assets and spatial patterns.
  - Guide decision-making to enable effective and sustainable use of shared national and geo-specific resources and assets; as well as minimise impact (and use opportunities brought by) global, national, inter-regional risks, threats.

**MEDIUM TERM**
- Aligned place based strategies & 20 year Infrastructure master plans
  - Enable review of viability of existing, and development of new spatial strategies and infrastructure (master) plans.
  - Basis to review infrastructure master plans to support/lock the expected role that regions/places & national assets/investments will play in the future.
  - Guide planning, design, phasing of sector and infrastructure master plans with clear vision of future spatial patterns.
  - Identify and guide place based regionally focussed intervention strategies at scale between significant private sector & government strategies.

**BUDGET CYCLE**
- Co-ordinated prioritisation, interventions, maintenance, implementation
  - Direct prioritisation and decision-making that contribute to formation of spatial patterns that are sustainable and support long term development vision of area AND nation
  - Cost benefit to households, municipalities and national investors
  - Minimise negative impact

**LONG TERM M&E**
- Shared accountability, differentiated spatial specific outcomes
  - Guide development of spatial outcomes and inform spatial differentiated targets.
  - Enable monitoring of progress with place-based transformation against expected role of place in national context (not a mere spatial depiction of local or ward based indicators)
  - Identify directed focus areas to achieve national priorities and international agreed targets (SDGs, emission targets etc.)
Figure 72: Priority National Spatial Action Areas
6.5 Implementation Planning

The NSDF has two key target dates:

- **2030**: In alignment with the NDP; and
- **2050**: In recognition of (1) the long-term infrastructural, and (2) other investments required over time to completely transform our society and country from colonialism and Apartheid to a truly democratic Post-Apartheid society.

Implementation of the NSDF has three 'cycles':

**Cycle 1: Initiation 2019 to 2023**

- Within this cycle the focus is on alignment of long-term plans, vision and shared understanding.
- This is achieved through building the championing capability and ensuring broad communication and awareness.
- The key targets for this phase include:
  - Establishment of a championing capability that is well resourced and enabled (measured by establishment of institutional capacity with this mandate);
  - Raising awareness of the NSDF and its implications across all three spheres of government, learning organisations, civil society and private sector (measured by acknowledgement in the MTSP/MTSF and MTEF and use of and reference to the NSDF vision in alignment of national sector plans, PGDSs and municipal SDFs/IDPs); and
  - Responding to the call for action regarding the NSAAs in Part 5, and planning for and embarking on decisive action in accordance with the guidance provided.

**Cycle 2: Alignment, budgeting and execution 2024 to 2043**

- Here the focus is on alignment of spatial strategy and medium-term plans.
- Strengthening and deepening of action in accordance with the provisions of the NSAAs is now well under way, and in some cases, notably the NSAAs relating to the environment, the objectives with regards to stabilisation, preservation, protection and management of fragile ecosystems have been realised.
- This cycle is broken up into four five-year cycles corresponding with the five-year government planning cycles. In this phase the aim is to build on the foundation laid in the initiation phase.
- In the first five-year cycle (2024 to 2028), the main focus would be on institutionalisation of the NSDF and embedding the NSDF in national, provincial and municipal planning. The key targets in this phase include:
  - Use of the NSDF in the MTSP/MTSF and MTEF, and other centre of government planning, budgeting and implementation tools (measured by the use of the NSDF in guiding priority actions at a national level to align and guide spatially targeted investment); and
  - Use of the NSDF in the Sector Plans, PGDSs and SDFs/IDPs to enable greater cross-country coherence, whilst still respecting provincial and local contexts and challenges (measured by use of and reference to the NSDF).
- In the next three five-year cycles, the aim is to see a refinement and deepening of the institutionalisation and embedding, but with greater emphasis being placed on the execution of the spatial priorities identified in the NSDF Spatial Frames (measured by project progress on priorities and budget allocations).
Cycle 3: Renew and re-do 2044 to 2049

- In the last five-year cycle, it would be expected of implementation to continue, but for a full evaluation to be undertaken and the preparation for the compilation of the next NSDF to begin.

The Implementation Cycles are shown in Figure 73 below, and the shifting focus of NSDF implementation over time is shown in Figure 74 on the following page.
Figure 73: NSDF Implementation Cycles

Cone of uncertainty over time in terms of strategic actions - need for reviews - but consistent focus on long-term vision and outcomes with growing impact.
Figure 74: NSDF Implementation Cycles Overview

- **Initiation** (2019-2023)
  - Establish championing capability and organise for implementation (including monitoring framework)
  - Establish and roll-out communications plan
  - Initiate alignment of visions in SDFs/IDPs, PGDSs, sector plans and long-term infrastructure plans.
  - Acknowledgement in MTSF

- **Alignment, Budgeting and Execution** (2024–2028 | 2029–2033 | 2034–2038 | 2039–2043)
  - Institutionalisation (MTSF and MTEF), embedding (Sector plans, PGDSs and SDFs/IDPs) and action (budget allocation) – with 5 yearly review in alignment with MTSF cycle
  - Moving from alignment of visions to budgeting and implementation alignment (built in IDPs, PGDSs, Sector Plans and infrastructure Plans)
  - Deepening reflection in MTSF and MTEF, deepening application through strategic plans and performance plans, PGDSs and IDPs

- **Renew and Re-Do** (2044-2048)
  - NSDF review and evaluation, three-year process of new NSDF and adoption for 2049-2053 MTSF.
  - Close-out
Figure 75: NSDF Implementation – Level of Focus over Time
6.6 NSDF Review

As indicated in Section 6.2, the NSDF takes a long-term view with both a 2030-horizon and a 2050-horizon. However, reality dictates that there will many changes and impacts over the course of this period which cannot be foreseen. The five-yearly reviews, in accordance with SPLUMA, are sure to result in shifts in the Frame, Sub-Frames, desired National Spatial Outcomes and Priority Actions. It is, however, expected that the key transformative elements of the Vision and Logic will hold true, and continue to guide action.

6.7 Monitoring and Evaluation

The regular process of five-yearly review, along with a mid-term review of the NSDF and its impacts, will require a monitoring and evaluation framework to be developed. Some indication has already been given as to the broad indicators and measurement of the NSDF. However, this monitoring and review framework needs to specifically address the achievement of the NSDF transformational changes and impacts. This will need to be an important focus of the championing agent in the initiation phase. The development of the framework is also an opportunity to contribute to deepening the understanding of the NSDF and its intended outcomes. It should thus be used as an opportunity to (1) engage the three spheres of government and other civil society, learning and private sector bodies, and (2) continue the discussions started in and through the compilation of the NSDF.

This broad overall monitoring will work in tandem with the national spatial accountability system under Workstream 4.
PART SEVEN: Conclusion
This Draft NSDF highlighted the persistence of colonial and apartheid spatial patterns and their detrimental impact on the ability of government to meet its national development objectives of reducing poverty, inequality and unemployment. To rid the country of this stubborn historical spatial stranglehold, a theory of change was developed that relies on, and proposes radical and decisive intervention in the national:

- Spatial development logic and pattern;
- Natural resource use and maintenance profile; and
- Patterns of ownership of, and access to, land and other resources.

The desired national spatial development vision, logic, and pattern, as put forward in the NSDF hold out the real promise of a very different South Africa by 2050. While providing overarching national spatial direction, catalytic impetus and guidance in moving the country towards the 2050-vision, the realisation of this desired South Africa will require of the NSDF to be:

- Championed;
- Communicated;
- Institutionalised;
- Embedded; and
- Actioned.

These five actions demand equally radical and decisive change in the way investment and spending is planned, budgeted for and done in the national space. While these changes will not always be easy, and entail very different ways of engaging, collaborating and acting, the rewards of doing so will far outweigh the sacrifices – a peaceful, prosperous and truly transformed South Africa by 2050!
BIBLIOGRAPHY


Christensen et al. (2007); Engelbrecht et al. (2009); James and Washington. (2013); Niang et al. (2014) conducted by the CSIR as part of The Green Book: Settlement design guidelines for climate change adaptation in South Africa


Coastal Protection Zones – 100m from the high-water mark in Urban, 1000m in non-urban. [Online]: https://www.environment.gov.za/sites/default/files/docs/guideto_icm_act.pdf


Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, 2018 (b). Population Projections for 2030 and 2050


Department of Environmental Affairs (DEA). PAKISHA’s: Aqua culture and Ocean’s Economy.

Department of Human Settlements Spatial Master Plan (guiding land release and investment through the Housing Development Agency)


Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (DRDLR) - Branch: Spatial Planning and Land Use Management. Overview of Deliverables.


Department of Trade and Industry (the dti). Integrated National Export Strategy (INES): “Export 2030”.


Freshwater Programme (SANBI) - https://www.sanbi.org/biodiversity-science/science-policyaction/mainstreaming-biodiversity/freshwater-programme


Important Bird Areas - http://www.birdlife.org.za/conservation/important-bird-areas/iba-map


National Climate Change Adaptation Strategy.


National Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Areas – http://bgis.sanbi.org/nfepa/project.asp


National Treasury, Municipal Support Focus Areas per Local Municipality, 2016-2017.


Nineteen National Parks - https://www.sanparks.org/


Renewable Energy Development Zones (REDZ) - as identified investment areas for renewable energy resource investment. [Online]: https://egis.environment.gov.za/renewable_energy


Snowball, Collins and Tarentaal. (2016). Transformation and job creation in the cultural and creative industry in SA, SACO.


South African Cultural Observatory (SACO). (2017). Macroeconomic impact assessment and analysis of South Africa’s cultural and creative industry (CCI) and creative. Submitted to the Department of Arts and Culture.


South Africa. Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, 2013 (SPLUMA).

State of the Nation Address by the President of the Republic of South Africa, Mr Cyril Ramaphosa, 16 February 2018, Parliament.


Succulent Karoo Programme (SANBI) - https://www.sanbi.org/biodiversity-science/science-policyaction/mainstreaming-biodiversity/succulent-karoo-programme

Strategic Infrastructure Investment Projects (SIPS)

Taylor et al. (2016). Economic and Wildlife Trust report on wildlife ranching


Western Cape, Provincial Spatial Development Framework, 2014.
Wetlands of International Importance in SA (Ramsar sites) - http://www.saramsar.com/p/possibly-most-important-factor-in.html

World Wild Life Fund’s 2015 report on SWSAs


Inter-regional Long-term planning frameworks

- United Nations. 2015. Sustainable Development Goals

National Long-Term Visions and Plans


National Policies and Plans

- City Support Programme (2012).

National Long-Term Infrastructure Sector Plans

- Department of Water Affairs and Forestry (DWAF), (2017).
- National Climate Change Adaptation Strategy

Location Specific Investment Infrastructure (Map of Current)

- Strategic National South African Infrastructure network and plans, including: Strategic freight, heavy haul and passenger railway networks, Road network, Ports,
- Industrial Development Zones
- Special Economic Zones,
- ESKOM, 2017. Hydro Electricity, hydro-electricity, biomass electricity and co-generation electricity, and coal fired power generation sites

Significant environmental protection areas:

- Nineteen National Parks - https://www.sanparks.org/
National Spatial Development Framework Draft 2019

- Coastal Protection Zones – 100m from the high-water mark in Urban, 1000m in non-urban. - https://www.environment.gov.za/sites/default/files/docs/guideto_icm_act.pdf
- Wetlands of International Importance in SA (Ramsar sites) - http://www.saramsar.com/p/possibly-most-important-factor-in.html

National Government Spatial Specific Investment Initiatives

- Strategic Infrastructure Investment Projects (SIPS)
- Integrated Urban Development Framework Implementation: 37 Intermediary City Municipalities
- Department of Human Settlements Spatial Master Plan (guiding land release and investment through the Housing Development Agency)
- Renewable Energy Development Zones - as identified investment areas for renewable energy resource investment.
- PAKISHA's: Aqua culture and Ocean's Economy
- City Support Programme & BEPPs: Grant alignment and incentivisation
- Significant programmes, principles, policies or projects relating to environment:
  - Grasslands Programme (SANBI) - https://www.sanbi.org/biodiversity-science/science-policyaction/mainstreaming-biodiversity/grasslands-programme
  - Freshwater Programme (SANBI) - https://www.sanbi.org/biodiversity-science/science-policyaction/mainstreaming-biodiversity/freshwater-programme
  - Succulent Karoo Programme (SANBI) - https://www.sanbi.org/biodiversity-science/science-policyaction/mainstreaming-biodiversity/succulent-karoo-programme

National Studies and Assessments

- Department of Agriculture, RSA. 2014. Land capability. (dataset).
- Important Bird Areas - http://www.birdlife.org.za/conservation/important-bird-areas/iba-map

**Provincial Spatial Plans**

- KwaZulu-Natal, Provincial Growth & Development Plan, 2018
- Eastern Cape, Provincial Spatial Development Plan, 2010
- Free State, Provincial Spatial Development Framework, 2014
- Gauteng, Provincial Spatial Development Framework, 2017
- Mpumalanga, Provincial Spatial Development Framework, 2013
- Northern Cape, Provincial Spatial Development Framework, 2012
- North West, Provincial Spatial Development Framework, 2016
- Western Cape, Provincial Spatial Development Framework, 2014

**NSDF Diagnostic Reports**

Figure Reference and Resource List

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIGURE No.</th>
<th>FIGURE TITLE</th>
<th>Specific Terms or components of figures</th>
<th>Where obtained from/How calculated?</th>
<th>Reference/Source for more evidence/further reading</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Figure 1</td>
<td>National Transformation Logic</td>
<td></td>
<td>NSDF technical team work</td>
<td>NSDF - EUP technical team, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 2</td>
<td>The NDPs proposed National Schema for Spatial Targeting</td>
<td></td>
<td>Published NDP document</td>
<td>National Planning Commission, 2011. National Development Plan: Vision for 2030. Pretoria. NPC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 3</td>
<td>The Role of the NSDF within the ‘Family” of Strategic and Sector Plans of Government</td>
<td></td>
<td>NSDF technical team work</td>
<td>NSDF - EUP technical team, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 4</td>
<td>Document Structure</td>
<td></td>
<td>NSDF technical team work</td>
<td>NSDF - EUP technical team, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 5</td>
<td>NSDF Preparation Process</td>
<td></td>
<td>NSDF technical team work</td>
<td>NSDF - EUP technical team, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 6</td>
<td>NSDF 2018 Development and building blocks to support impact and alignment</td>
<td>Policies, strategies, frameworks, plans, Reports</td>
<td>Constructed graphically by NSDF technical team. Constructed from various reports reflected in bibliography.</td>
<td>NSDF - EUP technical team, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 7</td>
<td>People and Places-Population and Settlement</td>
<td>Population per Settlement Type. Calculated using the</td>
<td></td>
<td>Spatial data indicators based on StatsSA 2011 and Household Survey 2016</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Verna Nel, Busani Moyo, Stuart Denoon-Stevens, Maartin Friedrich. 2016. Spatial Economy. Kena Consult PTY Ltd Prepared for DRDLR.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIGURE No</th>
<th>FIGURE TITLE</th>
<th>Specific Terms or components of figures</th>
<th>Where obtained from/How calculated?</th>
<th>Reference/Source for more evidence/further reading</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FIGURE. No</td>
<td>FIGURE TITLE</td>
<td>Specific Terms or components of figures</td>
<td>Where obtained from/How calculated?</td>
<td>Reference/Source for more evidence/further reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sparsely Settled Areas-Western and Central Region</td>
<td>Sparsely populated region with less than 10 people per square km, with scattered towns. Calculated using the CSIR Mesoframe 2017 and Functional Town Typology, 2018</td>
<td>CSIR Town typology, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cities and towns</td>
<td>Calculated using the CSIR Mesoframe 2017 and Functional Town Typology, 2018</td>
<td>CSIR Town typology, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dense Rural Settlements: Former homeland areas</td>
<td></td>
<td>CSIR Town typology, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Densely Settled Coastal Corridor</td>
<td></td>
<td>CSIR Town typology, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIGURE No</td>
<td>FIGURE TITLE</td>
<td>Specific Terms or components of figures</td>
<td>Where obtained from/How calculated?</td>
<td>Reference/Source for more evidence/further reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Protected Areas</td>
<td>BCascade/index.html?appid=5180459a765c4e63bfb3fa527c7302b3</td>
<td>Department of Environmental Affairs, 2018.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 10</td>
<td>People and Places – National Land Use-Productive Land</td>
<td>Trans-frontier Parks</td>
<td>a Trans-frontier Park is an area comprising two areas, which border each other across international boundaries and whose primary focus is wildlife conservation.</td>
<td>Department of Environmental Affairs, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mountains</td>
<td></td>
<td>CSIR Mesozone Land descriptions 2017</td>
<td>CSIR Town typology, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hyper Arid Zones</td>
<td></td>
<td>CSIR Mesozone Land descriptions 2017</td>
<td>CSIR Town typology, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Arid Zone</td>
<td></td>
<td>CSIR Mesozone Land descriptions 2017</td>
<td>CSIR Town typology, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIGURE No</td>
<td>FIGURE TITLE</td>
<td>Specific Terms or components of figures</td>
<td>Where obtained from/How calculated?</td>
<td>Reference/Source for more evidence/further reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Productive Use: Urban and Rural Settlement area</td>
<td><a href="http://stepsa.org/socio_econ.html">http://stepsa.org/socio_econ.html</a></td>
<td>CSIR Town typology, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Productive Use: Sparsely Populated areas</td>
<td>Based on Department of Environmental Affairs. Sourced from <a href="https://egis.environment.gov.za/">https://egis.environment.gov.za/</a> Department of Agriculture, Used in NDP, 2011 -</td>
<td>CSIR Town typology, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 11</td>
<td>People and Places – Population Vulnerability – People in poverty</td>
<td>Social Vulnerability</td>
<td>Vulnerability of households in terms of a range of indicators, based on a multi-criteria analyses including inter alia, household income levels, female and child headed households, child mortality.</td>
<td>Le Roux et al 2015 – See stepSA Indicators on Web site for fully reference and description <a href="http://stepsa.org/social_vulnerability.html">http://stepsa.org/social_vulnerability.html</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The number of people living below minimum household income level is used as indication of people living in poverty</td>
<td>Low levels of household income or household poverty is an item often used to depict where households are that have a low standard of living and which are subsequently most in need of services and assistance</td>
<td>Based on StatsSA, 2011; Quantec 2014; Developed for DRDLR by CSIR – See DRDLR Project on stepSA <a href="http://stepsa.org/priority_rural_districts.html">http://stepsa.org/priority_rural_districts.html</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIGURE. No</td>
<td>FIGURE TITLE</td>
<td>Specific Terms or components of figures</td>
<td>Where obtained from/How calculated?</td>
<td>Reference/Source for more evidence/further reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Household poverty see: <a href="http://stepsa.org/household_poverty.html">http://stepsa.org/household_poverty.html</a></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Age distribution 0-14 years</td>
<td>Indication if the numbers of the population in the below 14 age category depicted from Mesozone data and displayed as circular graphics reflecting size.</td>
<td>CSIR Town typology, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 12</td>
<td>Ecologies, Economies and Spaces – Climate Change and Projected Regional Implications</td>
<td>Increase in temperature Decrease in Rainfall Increase in rainfall events etc.</td>
<td>Provided through CSIR Green Book Project 2018 which undertook Climate Change Modelling based on scenarios See Annexure for brief description of analysis process.</td>
<td>The Green Book. 2019. Green Book: Adapting South African settlements to climate change. <a href="http://www.greenbook.csir.co.za">www.greenbook.csir.co.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 13</td>
<td>Ecologies, Economies and Spaces – National Ecological Infrastructure</td>
<td>Protected areas</td>
<td>The South African Protected Areas Database (SAPAD) and the South African Conservation Areas Database (SACAD) are GIS inventories of all protected and conservation areas in South Africa. The database</td>
<td>Department of Environmental Affairs, 2018.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIGURE. No</td>
<td>FIGURE TITLE</td>
<td>Specific Terms or components of figures</td>
<td>Where obtained from/How calculated?</td>
<td>Reference/Source for more evidence/further reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>includes data on privately owned protected and conservation areas. Sourced from <a href="https://egis.environment.gov.za/">https://egis.environment.gov.za/</a></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Strategic water source production areas</td>
<td>Ground Water - Strategic water source for groundwater areas can be described as the country’s most important water sources, because they supply a disproportionately high amount of the country’s water in relation to their size Surface Water Areas - Strategic water source for surface water areas can be described as the country’s most important water sources, because they supply a disproportionately high amount of the country’s water in relation to their size Statistics calculated is based on land areas, transfers and</td>
<td>Natural Resources and Environment (NRE) Unit at CSIR and Water Research Commission(WRC), 2017. [Commissioned research project]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Strategic water source for groundwater areas can be described as the country’s most important water sources, because they supply a disproportionately high amount of the country’s water in relation to their size*

*Surface Water Areas - Strategic water source for surface water areas can be described as the country’s most important water sources, because they supply a disproportionately high amount of the country’s water in relation to their size*

*Statistics calculated is based on land areas, transfers and*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIGURE No</th>
<th>FIGURE TITLE</th>
<th>Specific Terms or components of figures</th>
<th>Where obtained from/How calculated?</th>
<th>Reference/Source for more evidence/further reading</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Figure 14</td>
<td>Ecologies, Economies and Spaces – Ecological infrastructure, Interdependence and Threats</td>
<td>Water security: Spatial Interdependencies</td>
<td>Analysis based on water production areas, transfer schemes and settlement typology. Sourced from reports and a spatial analysis of water transfers.</td>
<td>Manadala GiS. 2018. (<a href="https://mandalagis.com">https://mandalagis.com</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Stressed Catchments</td>
<td>Stressed catchments- Water stress is when the amount of water used exceeds 10% of renewable resources</td>
<td>Department of Environmental Affairs, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Water Scarce Regions</td>
<td>Selection of arid areas receiving low rainfall. Extracted from Mesozone data.</td>
<td>CSIR Town Typology, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 15</td>
<td>Ecologies, Economies and Spaces – Supporting Ecological Infrastructure Food Security: Spatial Interdependencies and Critical Role of Dense Rural</td>
<td>High Potential Agricultural Land</td>
<td>Agriculture Land capability, determined by the collective effects of soil, terrain and climate features, shows the most intensive long-term use of land for rain-fed agriculture.</td>
<td>South Africa’s Agricultural Geo-referenced Information System (AGIS), Dept. Agriculture.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIGURE. No</td>
<td>FIGURE TITLE</td>
<td>Specific Terms or components of figures</td>
<td>Where obtained from/How calculated?</td>
<td>Reference/Source for more evidence/further reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dense Rural Area</td>
<td>CSIR Functional Town Area 2018 indicating dense rural settlement areas. These areas are subsequently highlighted.</td>
<td>CSIR Town Typology, 2018</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Land with Very high and High productive capacity Land with agricultural production capacity</td>
<td>Land capability data reflecting areas of land with highest land capability. Information sourced from AGIS.</td>
<td>Department of Agriculture - AGIS, 2015</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Important water source areas</td>
<td>Drawing from Strategic water source production areas (described above)</td>
<td>Natural Resources and Environment (NRE) Unit at CSIR and Water Research Commission(WRC), 2017. [Commissioned research project]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 16</td>
<td>Ecologies, Economies and Spaces – Regional Economic Trends - Regional Economic Growth and Employment</td>
<td>LM economic growth compared against national average (2001 - 2016) Employment calculated per Town</td>
<td>Town calculation CSIR Functional Town Area 2018 Total Employment presented for 2016</td>
<td>Based on StatsSA, 2011; and Quantec, 2016. [<a href="https://www.quantec.co.za/">https://www.quantec.co.za/</a>]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIGURE No</td>
<td>FIGURE TITLE</td>
<td>Specific Terms or components of figures</td>
<td>Where obtained from/How calculated?</td>
<td>Reference/Source for more evidence/further reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 18</td>
<td>Ecologies, Economies and Spaces – People and Agglomeration Economies in Polycentric Network of Cities and Town</td>
<td>People and Service Economy. Government Services</td>
<td>Spatial Indicators based on Mesozone 2017 and CSIR Functional Town Area, 2018 Government services – reflected by SIC categories, values interpolated see also Figure 16. People economy also indicating places of large population agglomerations.</td>
<td>StatsSA, 2011; Quantec, 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 19</td>
<td>Ecologies, Economies and Spaces – Agriculture</td>
<td>Agriculture as significant contributor to national</td>
<td>Spatial Indicators based on CSIR Mesozones, 2017.</td>
<td>StatsSA, 2011; Quantec 2016.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIGURE No</td>
<td>FIGURE TITLE</td>
<td>Specific Terms or components of figures</td>
<td>Where obtained from/How calculated?</td>
<td>Reference/Source for more evidence/further reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resource Economy and Food Production</td>
<td>economies and sector employment</td>
<td>Indicating areas of highest agriculture GVA output (Mesozones). Also includes 20 largest LM with highest agriculture GVA.</td>
<td>Towards Spatial Perspectives in support of the NDP: Unpublished Report prepared by the CSIR for Economic Development Department (EDD), 2015.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agriculture as significant contributor to local economies and employment</td>
<td>GVA percentage for Agriculture sector for total GVA- presented per Mesozone, 2016.</td>
<td>Towards Spatial Perspectives in support of the NDP: Unpublished Report prepared by the CSIR for Economic Development Department (EDD), 2015.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agriculture land significance for national food production</td>
<td>Graphic illustration of land with high agriculture potential (land capability) and high value production (crop fields data)</td>
<td>Department of Agriculture , 2018 and CSIR Town Typology, 2018 – reflecting GVA sector values.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Movement, Connections and Flows – Connectivity</td>
<td>Built Environment Infrastructure Focus areas.</td>
<td>Built-Areas of most dense built-up development AND biggest backlogs nationally identified to indicate areas of most significant focus for continued service delivery, maintenance investment and related enterprise opportunity in construction, green energy sectors. Based on SACN Functional Town Area Typology, 2016 and updated</td>
<td>Towards Spatial Perspectives in support of the NDP: Unpublished Report prepared by the CSIR for EDD;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIGURE No.</td>
<td>FIGURE TITLE</td>
<td>Specific Terms or components of figures</td>
<td>Where obtained from/How calculated?</td>
<td>Reference/Source for more evidence/further reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>with CSIR Town Area Typology 2018.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Connectivity</td>
<td>Drawn from key road and rail routes reflected by National Department of Transport – in the 2015 NATMAP</td>
<td>National Transport Master Plan, 2015</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freight flow</td>
<td>Spatial reflecting three main freight volumes; mining, manufacturing and agriculture commodities.</td>
<td>Logistics Barometer 2016, University of Stellenbosch. 2014 Freight Flows</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 21</td>
<td>Movement, Connections and Flows – Inter-regional Trade Connections</td>
<td>Global, inter-regional, national and rural development networks, gateways and anchors for service, industry, export/import, business, administration, tourism, etc. Attractors, centres, access points (e.g. cities, towns, SEZs Ports) and connectors (e.g. ranging from corridors to road, rail, air, sea connections). Identification of regional and rural economic development network anchors and gateways, based on indicators developed in accordance with OECD and EU criteria for identification of regional crossboundary economic flows, international studies and SADC and African case study analyses. Including</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIGURE No</td>
<td>FIGURE TITLE</td>
<td>Specific Terms or components of figures</td>
<td>Where obtained from/How calculated?</td>
<td>Reference/Source for more evidence/further reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Energy Infrastructure and Potential | Reflects current energy infrastructure as well as potential areas for green energy. Utilising SA wind atlas and geospatial analysis on potential for solar energy. Solar radiation is a general term for the electromagnetic radiation emitted by the sun. We can capture and convert solar radiation into useful forms of energy, such as heat and electricity, using a variety of technologies. Amount of energy per m² per day for January to December. | ESKOM, 2017
National Treasury 2018. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIGURE No</th>
<th>FIGURE TITLE</th>
<th>Specific Terms or components of figures</th>
<th>Where obtained from/How calculated?</th>
<th>Reference/Source for more evidence/further reading</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Figure 25</strong> Municipal Financial Viability</td>
<td>Comparison of municipal budget per household for municipalities of over 50 000 and densities greater than 500 p/km²</td>
<td>Reflect municipalities with population above 50000 and densities higher than 500 persons/km². Reflect budget per household.</td>
<td>IUDF Presentation, 2018.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Financial Distress Score</td>
<td>Local municipal distress score.</td>
<td>National Treasury, Municipal Financially Distressed Municipalities 2016-2017</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Figure 26</strong> Institutions and services – Municipal Capability</td>
<td>An Indication of current Governance support focus areas</td>
<td>Intermediary Cities Programme municipalities with support type received and municipalities that have been identified for support.</td>
<td>National Treasury, Municipal Support Focus Areas per Local Municipality, 2016-2017</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Figure 27</strong> Institutions and services – Municipal Capability</td>
<td>Municipal Capability- Capable Cities Index Components of Municipal Capability</td>
<td></td>
<td>Parnel, S., Moodley, N., and Palmer, I., 2017. Defining the four components of capability</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Figure 2</strong> Institutions and services – Social Services People and Service Economy</td>
<td>Government Services People and Service economy</td>
<td>Spatial Indicators based on CSIR Mesozones, 2017. Reflecting government and service sectors (GVA values interpolated) combined with towns and roads network. Also reflected on smaller map is the</td>
<td>StatsSA, 2011; Quantec 2016. CSIR calculations, 2018.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIGURE No</td>
<td>FIGURE TITLE</td>
<td>Specific Terms or components of figures</td>
<td>Where obtained from/How calculated?</td>
<td>Reference/Source for more evidence/further reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>generalised service extent of larger regional centres.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 29</td>
<td>The National Spatial Development Vision Statement</td>
<td>NSDF Graphic</td>
<td>NSDF technical team.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 31</td>
<td>National Spatial Development Levers</td>
<td>NSDF Graphic various illustrating concepts.</td>
<td>NSDF Technical Team, 2018</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 33</td>
<td>Schematic Presentation of a Regional-Rural Development Model</td>
<td>Urban and Rural Region National Urban Core Regional Development Anchors Small Service Centre Small Town Rural Settlement Defined by NSDF based on CSIR Functional Town Area Typology See Annexure for list of places and definitions</td>
<td>NSDF Technical Team, 2018.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIGURE No</td>
<td>FIGURE TITLE</td>
<td>Specific Terms or components of figures</td>
<td>Where obtained from/How calculated?</td>
<td>Reference/Source for more evidence/further reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 34</td>
<td>A National Spatial Social Service Provisioning Models (&quot;Social Service Wheel&quot;)</td>
<td>Service Wheel</td>
<td>Adapted for NSDF town types and based on CSIR Guidelines for the Provision of Social Facilities In South African Settlements First edition 2012, reprinted 2015 Social</td>
<td><a href="http://stepsa.org/service_wheel_typology.html">http://stepsa.org/service_wheel_typology.html</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 35</td>
<td>Illustration of Town Service Reach</td>
<td>Regional Centre and Service Town reach</td>
<td>Approximate service area of town categories based on access distance of typical services. Regional Centres have a bigger reach with more and larger services. Service reach up to 100km in sparse areas but not less than 30km. Service Towns have a typical reach of 20-30 km</td>
<td>CSIR illustration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 36</td>
<td>National Development Pattern Transformed</td>
<td>NSDF Consolidated Settlement Scenario and population growth per settlement types</td>
<td>Developed by the NSDF team and based on The Medium Green Book Projections adapted based on the NSDF Spatial Vision</td>
<td>NSDF Vision and technical team, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 37</td>
<td>Putting it all Together</td>
<td>Graphic illustration of Spatial Vision</td>
<td>NSDF Graphic</td>
<td>NSDF technical team.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 38</td>
<td>Ideal National Spatial Development Pattern to NSDF sub-frames</td>
<td>Graphic illustration of link between Ideal NSD Pattern to sub-frames</td>
<td>NSDF Graphic</td>
<td>NSDF technical team.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIGURE No</td>
<td>FIGURE TITLE</td>
<td>Specific Terms or components of figures</td>
<td>Where obtained from/How calculated?</td>
<td>Reference/Source for more evidence/further reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 39</td>
<td>National Spatial Development Framework</td>
<td></td>
<td>See Implementation framework for detail descriptions of regions</td>
<td>NSFD Technical Team, 2018.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 40</td>
<td>Supra-National Frame</td>
<td>Main cross regional road and rail corridors reflected by NATMAP (National Department of Transport) and Cross Border Road Agency.</td>
<td></td>
<td>NATMAP, 2015.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 41</td>
<td>National Urban Network Sub-Frame</td>
<td>Urban Regions National Urban Nodes Regional Development Anchors</td>
<td>See Annexure for definitions and list of places</td>
<td>CSIR Functional Town Area, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 42</td>
<td>National and Regional Settlement and Service Network</td>
<td>Application of Rural Regional Service model to South Africa based on the Service Wheel</td>
<td>Analysis based on Settlement hierarchy of NSDF types. Feeder lines connecting smaller towns to larger centres.</td>
<td>NSDF Technical Team, 2018.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 43</td>
<td>National Resource Production Regions Sub-Frame</td>
<td>National Agri-Enterprises and Small Scale Farming Region</td>
<td>Productive areas existing and potential, including densely settled areas. Areas in more suitable future climate areas. Focus on small scale farming and related enterprises.</td>
<td>NSDF Technical Team, 2018.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Central Agricultural Heartland</td>
<td>Protect high-value agricultural land. See Annexure B for more</td>
<td></td>
<td>NSDF Technical Team, 2018.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Arid-Agri-Innovation Region</td>
<td>Primarily extensive agricultural activities, with pockets and</td>
<td></td>
<td>NSDF Technical Team, 2018.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIGURE No</td>
<td>FIGURE TITLE</td>
<td>Specific Terms or components of figures</td>
<td>Where obtained from/How calculated?</td>
<td>Reference/Source for more evidence/further reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>stretches of intensive irrigation-farming, (2) mining clusters, (3) renewable energy farms/plants, and (4) small, compact settlements in an arid region</td>
<td>National Ocean &amp; Aqua Culture Production</td>
<td>NSDF Technical Team, 2018.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>High Value Agricultural Production</td>
<td>Areas of high value production (crop fields data)</td>
<td>Department of Agriculture, 2018 and CSIR Town Typology, 2018 – reflecting GVA sector values.</td>
<td>Department of Agriculture, 2018 and CSIR Town Typology, 2018 – reflecting GVA sector values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Productive Agriculture Regions</td>
<td>Graphic illustration of land with high agriculture potential (land capability) based on interpolation of above</td>
<td>Productive Agriculture Regions</td>
<td>NSDF Technical Team, 2018.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nationally Protected Areas</td>
<td>The South African Protected Areas Database (SAPAD) and the South African Conservation Areas Database (SACAD) are GIS inventories of all protected and conservation areas in South Africa. The database</td>
<td>Nationally Protected Areas</td>
<td>Department of Environmental Affairs, 2018. Sourced from <a href="https://egis.environment.gov.za/">https://egis.environment.gov.za/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIGURE. No</td>
<td>FIGURE TITLE</td>
<td>Specific Terms or components of figures</td>
<td>Where obtained from/How calculated?</td>
<td>Reference/Source for more evidence/further reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>National Connectivity and Movement Infrastructure Sub-Frame</td>
<td>Key road and rail routes as reflected in NATMAP Development corridors are routes along densely settled areas. Reflecting ports of entry/exit and economic zones.</td>
<td>NATMAP, 2015 DTI, 2014.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>National Ecological Infrastructure and Natural Resources Base Sub-Frame</td>
<td>National Protected Areas The South African Protected Areas Database (SAPAD) and the South African Conservation Areas Database (SACAD) are GIS inventories of all protected and conservation areas in South Africa. The database includes data on privately owned protected and conservation areas.</td>
<td>Department of Environmental Affairs, 2018. Sourced from <a href="https://egis.environment.gov.za/">https://egis.environment.gov.za/</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Marine Protected Areas</td>
<td>Part of national protected areas</td>
<td>Department of Environmental Affairs, 2018.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>National Ecological and Biodiversity Management Areas (CBA’s ESA’s)</td>
<td>CBAs - Areas that are required to meet biodiversity Targets</td>
<td>SANBI, 2018 [<a href="https://www.sanbi.org/">https://www.sanbi.org/</a>]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIGURE. No</td>
<td>FIGURE TITLE</td>
<td>Specific Terms or components of figures</td>
<td>Where obtained from/How calculated?</td>
<td>Reference/Source for more evidence/further reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ESAs - Areas that are not essential for meeting biodiversity targets, but that plays an important role in supporting the functioning of CBAs and/or for delivering ecosystem services</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Strategic Water Source Areas</td>
<td>Strategic Surface e and Ground Water - Strategic ground and surface water areas can be described as the country’s most important water sources, because they supply a disproportionately high amount of the country’s water in relation to their size</td>
<td>Statistics calculated are based on land areas, transfers and population pressure using population data from the MesoFrame and CSIR Town Typology 2018.</td>
<td>Natural Resources and Environment (NRE) Unit at CSIR and Water Research Commission (WRC), 2017. [Commissioned research project]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inter-Basin Water Transfer line</td>
<td>Transfers captured through spatial analysis and enquiry.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Mandala GIS, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rivers and Dams</td>
<td>Geospatial data sourced from Dept Water Affairs</td>
<td></td>
<td>DWA, 2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIGURE No</td>
<td>FIGURE TITLE</td>
<td>Specific Terms or components of figures</td>
<td>Where obtained from/How calculated?</td>
<td>Reference/Source for more evidence/further reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 46</td>
<td>Strategic Spatial and Implementation Action Areas</td>
<td>See discussion of importance and role of each Implementation areas in the following section for more details</td>
<td>Interpretation of all available information indicated above</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 47</td>
<td>Ideal National Spatial Development Pattern to Strategic Action Areas</td>
<td>Linkage between Ideal SD Pattern to NSAA</td>
<td>NSDF Graphic</td>
<td>NSDF technical team.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 48-51</td>
<td>National Transformation Corridors</td>
<td>Coastal Transformation Corridor Eastern Escarpment Corridor Northwestern Transformation Corridor</td>
<td>Areas of large population concentration often is sprawling rural settlements forming a belt of development along key national routes but also areas having a major role to play with respect to future water and food security.</td>
<td>NSDF Vision.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 52-53</td>
<td>Central Innovation Belt</td>
<td>Central Innovation Belt</td>
<td>Areas currently largely dependent on a single economic sector (mostly Mining) that requires diversification and Innovation to grow and maintain its prominence in future</td>
<td>NSDF evaluation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 54-59</td>
<td>National Resource Risk Areas Overview</td>
<td>Upper Vaal River Catchment Olifants River Catchment Waterberg River Catchment uMngeni River Catchment</td>
<td>National Resource risk areas include areas where water production, Human Settlement, Agriculture and /or Mining</td>
<td>NSDF evaluation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIGURE No</td>
<td>FIGURE TITLE</td>
<td>Specific Terms or components of figures</td>
<td>Where obtained from/How calculated?</td>
<td>Reference/Source for more evidence/further reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Berg &amp; Breede River Catchment and dense population areas are in competition and intersect and where the catchments are stressed often due to pollution</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 60 - 63</td>
<td>National Urban Regions Overview</td>
<td>Gauteng Urban Region, Cape Town Urban Region, eThekwini Urban Region</td>
<td>Urban Regions have large populations and economy and are expected to continue to grow. They must play a critical role of providing homes and employment for a large % of the population now and in future. See Annexure for description and detail</td>
<td>NSDF analysis based on CSIR Functional Settlement Typology 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 64 - 65</td>
<td>Arid- Innovation Region Overview</td>
<td>Large arid area of the country (48%) that is very sparsely populated but interspersed with mostly small towns and settlements.</td>
<td>This is an area is expected to experience major impacts of climate change with respect to higher temperatures and lower rainfall. Innovation will be critical for the survival of people and economy of this region.</td>
<td>NSDF evaluation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 66</td>
<td>Workstream Overview</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NSDF Graphic</td>
<td>NSDF technical team.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 67</td>
<td>Championing of Spatial Transformation</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NSDF Graphic</td>
<td>NSDF technical team.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIGURE. No</td>
<td>FIGURE TITLE</td>
<td>Specific Terms or components of figures</td>
<td>Where obtained from/How calculated?</td>
<td>Reference/Source for more evidence/further reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 68</td>
<td>Clear Line of Sight</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NSDF Graphic, Adapted from DPME, 2018.</td>
<td>DPME presentation – not published, sourced from workshop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 69</td>
<td>National Role in System of Planning, Budgeting, Implementation and Monitoring</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NSDF Graphic</td>
<td>NSDF technical team.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 70</td>
<td>The Envisaged Role of the NSDF in Plan Preparation, Budgeting, Implementation and Review Cycles in Government</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NSDF Graphic</td>
<td>NSDF technical team.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 71</td>
<td>The Envisaged Role of the National Spatial Development Frame and Sub-Frames in Spatial Planning</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NSDF Graphic</td>
<td>NSDF technical team.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 72</td>
<td>Priority National Spatial Action Areas</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NSDF Graphic</td>
<td>NSDF technical team.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 73</td>
<td>NSDF Implementation Cycles Impact over time</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NSDF Graphic</td>
<td>NSDF technical team.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 74</td>
<td>NSDF Implementation Cycles Overview</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NSDF Graphic</td>
<td>NSDF technical team.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 75</td>
<td>NSDF Implementation – Level of Focus over Time</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NSDF Graphic</td>
<td>NSDF technical team.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 State of the Nation Address by the President of the Republic of South Africa, Mr Cyril Ramaphosa, 16 February 2018, Parliament.


5 Summarised from the IUDF, the publication “South Africa’s national urban development policy – the IUDF”, both published by CoGTA and the publication “Localising the New Urban Agenda: South Africa Discussion Document” (2018).

6 Source: Prof J van Tonder for CSIR/IRDC Green Book on Climate Change Adaptation.


9 The level of service per settlement typed indicated in the “Service Wheel” is based on the following previous work that is documented in:
   • Green, Cheri; Mans, Gerbrand; Ngidi, Mawande; Sogoni, Zukisa; & Maritz, Johan. Using Catchment Areas Analysis and GIS based Spatial Analysis for Prioritising Spatial Investment in Non.Metro South Africa- 2016. ISOCARP Durban, 12-16 September 2016. (Short title ‘Prioritisation of Towns for Social Investment’).
   • CSIR Town Area Typology 2018

x Where relevant, more detail on the National Sub-Frames is provided in Annexure B.

xi ESKOM (2016).

xii SADC (2012).

xiii SADC (2012).


xv As such, the process coordinated by the IUDF Working Group to expedite urban land reform is noted and strongly endorsed.

xvi Meso Frame: see http://stepsa.org/socio_econ.html

A Regional Spatial Development Framework, which serves as an example of such an initiative, is being proposed for the Vaal River area in the Northern Free State.

The Nama Karoo Regional Spatial Development Framework driven by SALGA, is a good example of such an initiative.

Departments tasked with and engaged in activities that aim to support the work and impact of sector departments and spheres with specific public service delivery mandates.

---

Link to the climate change projections findings:
Link to the population projections findings:

xvii A Regional Spatial Development Framework, which serves as an example of such an initiative, is being proposed for the Vaal River area in the Northern Free State.

xviii The Nama Karoo Regional Spatial Development Framework driven by SALGA, is a good example of such an initiative.


xix Departments tasked with and engaged in activities that aim to support the work and impact of sector departments and spheres with specific public service delivery mandates.